



FortiGate-7000 - Handbook

Version 6.0.14

FORTINET DOCUMENT LIBRARY

<https://docs.fortinet.com>

FORTINET VIDEO GUIDE

<https://video.fortinet.com>

FORTINET BLOG

<https://blog.fortinet.com>

CUSTOMER SERVICE & SUPPORT

<https://support.fortinet.com>

FORTINET TRAINING & CERTIFICATION PROGRAM

<https://www.fortinet.com/support-and-training/training.html>

NSE INSTITUTE

<https://training.fortinet.com>

FORTIGUARD CENTER

<https://fortiguard.com/>

END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

<https://www.fortinet.com/doc/legal/EULA.pdf>

FEEDBACK

Email: techdoc@fortinet.com



May 19, 2022

FortiGate-7000 6.0.14 Handbook

01-6014-396655-20220519

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Change log	12
What's New	14
What's new for FortiGate-7000 6.0.14	14
What's new for FortiGate-7000 6.0.13	14
What's new for FortiGate-7000 6.0.12	14
What's new for FortiGate-7000 6.0.10	14
What's new for FortiGate-7000 6.0.9	14
What's new for FortiGate-7000 6.0.8	15
What's new for FortiGate-7000 6.0.6	15
What's new for FortiGate-7000 6.0.4	15
FortiGate-7000 overview	16
Licenses, device registration, and support	16
FortiGate-7060E	16
FortiGate-7060E front panel	17
FortiGate-7060E schematic	18
FortiGate-7040E	19
FortiGate-7040E front panel	19
FortiGate-7040E schematic	19
FortiGate-7030E	20
FortiGate-7030E front panel	20
FortiGate-7030E schematic	21
FIM-7901E interface module	22
FIM-7901E front panel interfaces	23
FIM-7901E schematic	24
FIM-7904E interface module	25
FIM-7904E front panel interfaces	26
Splitting the FIM-7904E B1 to B8 interfaces	27
FIM-7904E hardware schematic	28
FIM-7910E interface module	28
FIM-7910E front panel interfaces	29
Splitting the FIM-7910E C1 to C4 interfaces	30
FIM-7910E hardware schematic	31
FIM-7920E interface module	32
FIM-7920E front panel interfaces	32
Changing the interface type and splitting the FIM-7920E C1 to C4 interfaces	33
Changing the interface type	34
Splitting the C1 to C4 interfaces	34
FIM-7920E hardware schematic	35
FPM-7620E processing module	35
FPM-7620E hardware schematic	36
FPM-7630E processing module	37
FPM-7630E hardware schematic	38

Getting started with FortiGate-7000	40
Multi VDOM mode	41
Confirming startup status	41
Configuration synchronization	42
Confirming that the FortiGate-7000 is synchronized	42
Viewing more details about FortiGate-7000 synchronization	44
FortiGate-7000 dashboard widgets	45
Security Fabric	45
Interface Bandwidth	45
Resource Usage	46
Sensor Information	46
Setting up management connections	46
Adding a password to the admin administrator account	47
Using data interfaces for management traffic	47
In-band management limitations	47
Setting the MTU for a data interface	48
More management connections than expected for one device	48
More ARP queries than expected for one device - potential issue on large WiFi networks	48
Replacing a failed FPM or FIM	49
Replacing a failed module in a standalone FortiGate-7000	49
Replacing a failed module in a FortiGate-7000 chassis in an HA cluster	49
Resolving FIM or FPM boot device I/O errors	50
Formatting an FIM boot device and installing new firmware	50
Formatting an FPM boot device and installing new firmware	51
Connecting to module CLIs using the System Management Module	53
Example: connecting to the FortiOS CLI of the FIM in slot 1	54
Failover in a standalone FortiGate-7000	54
Changing data interface network settings	54
Resetting to factory defaults	54
Restarting the FortiGate-7000	55
Packet sniffing for FIM and FPM packets	55
Diagnose debug flow trace for FPM and FIM activity	56
Showing how the DP2 processor will load balance a session	56
Normal and reverse sessions	56
Fragment packet sessions	56
Pinhole sessions	57
Normal session example output	57
Managing individual FortiGate-7000 FIMs and FPMs	58
Special management port numbers	58
HA mode special management port numbers	59
Managing individual FIMs and FPMs from the CLI	60
Connecting to individual FIM and FPM CLIs of the secondary FortiGate-7000 in an HA configuration	60
Firmware upgrades	61
Firmware upgrade basics	61
Verifying that a firmware upgrade is successful	61

Installing firmware on individual FIMs or FPMs	62
Upgrading the firmware on an individual FIM	62
Upgrading the firmware on an individual FPM	63
Installing FIM firmware from the BIOS after a reboot	64
Installing FPM firmware from the BIOS after a reboot	66
Synchronizing FIMs and FPMs after upgrading the primary FIM firmware from the BIOS ..	67
Load balancing and flow rules	69
Setting the load balancing method	69
Flow rules for sessions that cannot be load balanced	69
Determining the primary FPM	70
SSL VPN load balancing	71
If you change the SSL VPN server listening port	71
Adding the SSL VPN server IP address	72
FortiOS Carrier GTP load balancing	72
Optimizing NPU GTP performance	72
Enabling GTP load balancing	73
ICMP load balancing	74
Load balancing fragmented ICMP packets	74
Adding flow rules to support DHCP relay	75
Default configuration for traffic that cannot be load balanced	77
FortiGate-7000 IPsec VPN	82
IPsec VPN load balancing	82
Example IPv4 and IPv6 IPsec VPN flow rules	82
Troubleshooting	84
FortiGate-7000 high availability	86
New HA features and changes	86
Introduction to FortiGate-7000 FGCP HA	86
Before you begin configuring HA	88
Configure split ports	89
Connect the M1 and M2 interfaces for HA heartbeat communication	90
Default HA heartbeat VLAN triple-tagging	90
HA heartbeat VLAN double-tagging	92
Basic FortiGate-7000 HA configuration	94
Verifying that the cluster is operating normally	96
Confirming that the FortiGate-7000 HA cluster is synchronized	97
Viewing more details about HA cluster synchronization	98
Setting up HA management connections	99
Setting up single management connections to each of the FIMs	100
Setting up redundant management connections to each of the FIMs	100
Primary FortiGate-7000 selection with override disabled (default)	101
Primary FortiGate-7000 selection with override enabled	102
Failover protection	102
Device failure	103
FIM failure	103
Link failure	103

FPM failure	103
Session failover	104
Primary FortiGate-7000 recovery	104
HA cluster firmware upgrades	104
Distributed clustering	105
Modifying heartbeat timing	106
Changing the lost heartbeat threshold	107
Adjusting the heartbeat interval and lost heartbeat threshold	107
Changing the time to wait in the hello state	108
Changing how long routes stay in a cluster unit routing table	108
Session failover (session-pickup)	109
Enabling session synchronization for TCP, SCTP, and connectionless sessions	109
If session pickup is disabled	110
Reducing the number of sessions that are synchronized	110
Primary FortiGate-7000 selection	110
Age and primary FortiGate-7000 selection	113
Device priority and primary FortiGate-7000 selection	113
Override and primary FortiGate-7000 selection	113
Module failure and primary FortiGate-7000 selection	114
Verifying primary FortiGate-7000 selection	114
Primary FortiGate-7000 selection and override	114
Enabling override changes primary FortiGate-7000 selection	115
Link failover (port monitoring or interface monitoring)	117
To enable interface monitoring	117
If a monitored interface on the primary FortiGate-7000 fails	117
If a monitored interface on the secondary FortiGate-7000 fails	118
Remote link failover	118
Configuring remote IP monitoring	119
FortiGate-7000 FGSP	120
FGSP session synchronization options	121
Example FortiGate-7000 FGSP configuration	122
Standalone configuration synchronization	125
Limitations	126
FortiGate-7000 VRRP HA	126
FortiLink support	128
ICAP support	128
Example ICAP configuration	129
SSL mirroring support	130
Example SSL mirroring configuration	130
FortiGate-7000 v6.0.14 special features and limitations	132
Managing the FortiGate-7000	132
Default management VDOM	132
Default Security Fabric configuration	132
Maximum number of LAGs and interfaces per LAG	133
Firewall	133
Enhanced MAC (EMAC) VLAN support	133

FortiLink support limitations	133
IP multicast	134
High availability	134
Shelf manager module	135
FortiOS features not supported by FortiGate-7000 v6.0.14	135
IPsec VPN tunnels terminated by the FortiGate-7000	136
SSL VPN	136
Traffic shaping and DDoS policies	136
FortiGuard web filtering and spam filtering queries	136
Web filtering quotas	136
Log messages include a slot field	137
FortiOS Carrier	137
Special notice for new deployment connectivity testing	137
Display the process name associated with a process ID	137
FortiGate-7000 v6.0.13 special features and limitations	138
Managing the FortiGate-7000	138
Default management VDOM	138
Default Security Fabric configuration	138
Maximum number of LAGs and interfaces per LAG	139
Firewall	139
Enhanced MAC (EMAC) VLAN support	139
FortiLink support limitations	139
IP multicast	140
High availability	140
Shelf manager module	141
FortiOS features not supported by FortiGate-7000 v6.0.13	141
IPsec VPN tunnels terminated by the FortiGate-7000	142
SSL VPN	142
Traffic shaping and DDoS policies	142
FortiGuard web filtering and spam filtering queries	142
Web filtering quotas	142
Log messages include a slot field	143
FortiOS Carrier	143
Special notice for new deployment connectivity testing	143
Display the process name associated with a process ID	143
FortiGate-7000 v6.0.12 special features and limitations	144
Managing the FortiGate-7000	144
Default management VDOM	144
Default Security Fabric configuration	144
Maximum number of LAGs and interfaces per LAG	145
Firewall	145
Enhanced MAC (EMAC) VLAN support	145
FortiLink support limitations	145
IP multicast	146

High availability	146
Shelf manager module	147
FortiOS features not supported by FortiGate-7000 v6.0.12	147
IPsec VPN tunnels terminated by the FortiGate-7000	148
SSL VPN	148
Traffic shaping and DDoS policies	148
FortiGuard web filtering and spam filtering queries	148
Web filtering quotas	148
Log messages include a slot field	149
FortiOS Carrier	149
Special notice for new deployment connectivity testing	149
Display the process name associated with a process ID	149
FortiGate-7000 v6.0.10 special features and limitations	150
Managing the FortiGate-7000	150
Default management VDOM	150
Default Security Fabric configuration	150
Maximum number of LAGs and interfaces per LAG	151
Firewall	151
Enhanced MAC (EMAC) VLAN support	151
FortiLink support limitations	151
IP multicast	152
High availability	152
Shelf manager module	153
FortiOS features not supported by FortiGate-7000 v6.0.10	153
IPsec VPN tunnels terminated by the FortiGate-7000	154
SSL VPN	154
Traffic shaping and DDoS policies	154
FortiGuard web filtering and spam filtering queries	154
Web filtering quotas	155
Log messages include a slot field	155
FortiOS Carrier	155
Special notice for new deployment connectivity testing	155
Display the process name associated with a process ID	155
FortiGate-7000 v6.0.9 special features and limitations	156
Managing the FortiGate-7000	156
Default management VDOM	156
Default Security Fabric configuration	156
Maximum number of LAGs and interfaces per LAG	157
Firewall	157
Enhanced MAC (EMAC) VLAN support	157
FortiLink support limitations	157
IP multicast	158
High availability	158
Shelf manager module	159

FortiOS features not supported by FortiGate-7000 v6.0.9	159
IPsec VPN tunnels terminated by the FortiGate-7000	160
SSL VPN	160
Traffic shaping and DDoS policies	160
FortiGuard web filtering and spam filtering queries	160
Web filtering quotas	160
Log messages include a slot field	161
FortiOS Carrier	161
Special notice for new deployment connectivity testing	161
Display the process name associated with a process ID	161
FortiGate-7000 v6.0.8 special features and limitations	162
Managing the FortiGate-7000	162
Default management VDOM	162
Default Security Fabric configuration	162
Maximum number of LAGs and interfaces per LAG	163
Firewall	163
Enhanced MAC (EMAC) VLAN support	163
FortiLink support limitations	163
IP multicast	164
High availability	164
Shelf manager module	165
FortiOS features not supported by FortiGate-7000 v6.0.8	165
IPsec VPN tunnels terminated by the FortiGate-7000	166
SSL VPN	166
Traffic shaping and DDoS policies	166
FortiGuard web filtering and spam filtering queries	166
Web filtering quotas	166
Log messages include a slot field	167
FortiOS Carrier	167
Special notice for new deployment connectivity testing	167
Display the process name associated with a process ID	167
FortiGate-7000 v6.0.6 special features and limitations	168
Managing the FortiGate-7000	168
Default management VDOM	168
Default Security Fabric configuration	168
Maximum number of LAGs and interfaces per LAG	169
Firewall	169
Enhanced MAC (EMAC) VLAN support	169
FortiLink support limitations	169
IP multicast	170
High availability	170
Shelf manager module	171
FortiOS features not supported by FortiGate-7000 v6.0.6	171
IPsec VPN tunnels terminated by the FortiGate-7000	172

SSL VPN	172
Traffic shaping and DDoS policies	172
FortiGuard web filtering and spam filtering queries	172
Web filtering quotas	172
Log messages include a slot field	173
FortiOS Carrier	173
Special notice for new deployment connectivity testing	173
Display the process name associated with a process ID	173
FortiGate-7000 v6.0.4 special features and limitations	174
Managing the FortiGate-7000	174
Default management VDOM	174
Default Security Fabric configuration	174
Maximum number of LAGs and interfaces per LAG	175
Firewall	175
IP multicast	175
High availability	176
Use of the diagnose sys ha checksum cluster command not recommended	176
Shelf manager module	176
FortiOS features not supported by FortiGate-7000 v6.0.4	176
IPsec VPN tunnels terminated by the FortiGate-7000	177
SSL VPN	177
Traffic shaping and DDoS policies	178
FortiGuard web filtering and spam filtering queries	178
Web filtering quotas	178
Log messages include a slot field	178
FortiOS Carrier	178
Special notice for new deployment connectivity testing	178
FortiGate-7000 config CLI commands	179
config load-balance flow-rule	179
Syntax	179
config load-balance setting	182
FortiGate-7000 execute CLI commands	187
execute factoryreset3	187
execute ha manage <id>	187
execute load-balance console-mgmt {disable enable}	187
execute load-balance console-mgmt disconnect <console>	188
execute load-balance console-mgmt info	188
execute load-balance license-mgmt list	188
execute load-balance license-mgmt reset {all crypto-key forticlient vdom}	188
execute set-next-reboot rollback	188
execute load-balance slot manage <slot>	189
execute load-balance slot power-off <slot-map>	189
execute load-balance slot power-on <slot-map>	189
execute load-balance slot reboot <slot-map>	189

execute load-balance slot set-master-worker <slot> 189

Change log

Date	Change description
May 19, 2022	Additional changes to FortiGate-7000 FGSP on page 120 .
May 5, 2022	Corrections to the FGSP limitations described in FortiGate-7000 FGSP on page 120 .
April 28, 2022	FortiOS 6.0.14 document release.
December 9, 2021	Misc. changes throughout the document.
August 27, 2021	FortiOS 6.0.13 document release.
June 22, 2021	Added information about support for load balancing sessions without syn packets to FortiOS features not supported by FortiGate-7000 v6.0.12 on page 147 .
June 3, 2020	FortiOS 6.0.12 document release.
March 5, 2021	Added a note about requiring the Security Fabric to be enabled for normal operation to Confirming startup status on page 41 . New section, FPM-7630E processing module on page 37 .
December 7, 2020	New section: More ARP queries than expected for one device - potential issue on large WiFi networks on page 48 .
September 9, 2020	FortiOS 6.0.10 document release.
August 20, 2020	Changes to FortiOS Carrier GTP load balancing on page 72 . New sections: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Resolving FIM or FPM boot device I/O errors on page 50.• More management connections than expected for one device on page 48.
April 21, 2020	New and changed sections: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Failover protection on page 102.• Primary FortiGate-7000 selection on page 110.
April 6, 2020	FortiOS 6.0.9 document release.
January 22, 2020	Usage-based ECMP load balancing is not supported. See FortiOS features not supported by FortiGate-7000 v6.0.8 on page 165 .
December 19, 2019	FortiOS 6.0.8 document release.

Date	Change description
November 28, 2019	More information about new configuration synchronization checking features. See What's new for FortiGate-7000 6.0.6 on page 15 , Confirming that the FortiGate-7000 is synchronized on page 42 , Viewing more details about FortiGate-7000 synchronization on page 44 , Confirming that the FortiGate-7000 HA cluster is synchronized on page 97 , and Viewing more details about HA cluster synchronization on page 98 . A caution about configuration different chassis numbers in an HA configuration added to Basic FortiGate-7000 HA configuration on page 94 .
November 7, 2019	New sections: ICAP support on page 128 and SSL mirroring support on page 130 .
October 31, 2019	Added information about resolving HA cluster chassis ID conflicts to Introduction to FortiGate-7000 FGCP HA on page 86 .
October 29, 2019	Added more information and corrections to Special management port numbers on page 58 , Installing FPM firmware from the BIOS after a reboot on page 66 , and Maximum number of LAGs and interfaces per LAG on page 169 . As well, misc changes throughout.
October 7, 2019	Corrections and improvements to FortiGate-7000 FGSP on page 120 , Example FortiGate-7000 FGSP configuration on page 122 , and Standalone configuration synchronization on page 125 .
September 10, 2019	FortiOS 6.0.6 document release.
July 10, 2019	New section: Adding flow rules to support DHCP relay on page 75 . Formerly missing commands added to FortiGate-7000 execute CLI commands on page 187 . Additional changes and fixes throughout the document.
June 20, 2019	New section: Default Security Fabric configuration on page 174 .
April 30, 2019	Fixes and updates throughout the document.
April 29, 2019	Minor updates.
April 26, 2019	Fixes and updates throughout the document.
April 26, 2019	FortiOS 6.0.4 document release.

What's New

This section describes what's been added to FortiOS 6.0 FortiGate-7000 releases.

What's new for FortiGate-7000 6.0.14

FortiGate-7000 for FortiOS 6.0.14 is a bug fix release. See the [FortiGate-7000 for FortiOS 6.0.14 Release Notes](#) for details about the content of this release.

What's new for FortiGate-7000 6.0.13

FortiGate-7000 for FortiOS 6.0.13 is a bug fix release. See the [FortiGate-7000 for FortiOS 6.0.13 Release Notes](#) for details about the content of this release.

What's new for FortiGate-7000 6.0.12

FortiGate-7000 for FortiOS 6.0.12 is a bug fix release. See the [FortiGate-7000 for FortiOS 6.0.12 Release Notes](#) for details about the content of this release.

What's new for FortiGate-7000 6.0.10

FortiGate-7000 for FortiOS 6.0.10 is a bug fix release. See the [FortiGate-7000 for FortiOS 6.0.10 Release Notes](#) for details about the content of this release.

What's new for FortiGate-7000 6.0.9

FortiGate-7000 for FortiOS 6.0.9 is primarily a bug fix release. See the [FortiGate-7000 for FortiOS 6.0.9 Release Notes](#) for details about the content of this release.

This release also includes the following new features:

- HA heartbeat VLAN double-tagging, see [HA heartbeat VLAN double-tagging on page 92](#).
- New protocol for handling HA chassis ID conflicts, see [Introduction to FortiGate-7000 FGCP HA on page 86](#).

What's new for FortiGate-7000 6.0.8

FortiGate-7000 for FortiOS 6.0.8 is a bug fix release. See the [FortiGate-7000 for FortiOS 6.0.8 Release Notes](#) for details about the content of this release.

What's new for FortiGate-7000 6.0.6

FortiGate-7000 for FortiOS 6.0.6 includes the following new features:

- Security Fabric dashboard widget improvements, see [Security Fabric on page 45](#).
- Standalone configuration synchronization, see [Standalone configuration synchronization on page 125](#).
- FortiLint support, see [FortiLink support on page 128](#).
- In-band management, see [Using data interfaces for management traffic on page 47](#).
- Support for changing the HA `route_ttl` option, see [Changing how long routes stay in a cluster unit routing table on page 108](#).
- EMAC VLAN support, see [Enhanced MAC \(EMAC\) VLAN support on page 169](#).
- New command to temporarily select the primary (master) FPM, see [execute load-balance slot set-master-worker <slot> on page 189](#).
- Changes to FortiGate-7000 license handling, see [execute load-balance license-mgmt reset {all | crypto-key | forticlient | vdom} on page 188](#).
- Changes to IPsec VPN load balancing support, see [IPsec VPN load balancing on page 82](#).
- New `execute factoryreset3` command, see [execute factoryreset3 on page 187](#).
- Load balancing fragmented ICMP packets, see [Load balancing fragmented ICMP packets on page 74](#).
- New command to rollback firmware, see [execute set-next-reboot rollback on page 188](#).
- New diagnose command to display the process name associated with a process ID, see [Display the process name associated with a process ID on page 173](#).
- Changes to configuration synchronization information, see [Confirming that the FortiGate-7000 is synchronized on page 42](#), [Viewing more details about FortiGate-7000 synchronization on page 44](#), [Confirming that the FortiGate-7000 HA cluster is synchronized on page 97](#), and [Viewing more details about HA cluster synchronization on page 98](#).

What's new for FortiGate-7000 6.0.4

The following new features have been added to FortiGate-7000 6.0.4:

- Diagnose debug flow trace output improvements, see [Diagnose debug flow trace for FPM and FIM activity on page 56](#).
- New diagnose command to show how the DP processor will load balance a session, see [Showing how the DP2 processor will load balance a session on page 56](#).
- Enabling or disabling synchronizing connectionless sessions, see [Enabling session synchronization for TCP, SCTP, and connectionless sessions on page 109](#).
- ICMP traffic can now be load balanced, see [ICMP load balancing on page 74](#).
- FortiGate Session Life Support Protocol (FGSP) support, see [FortiGate-7000 FGSP on page 120](#).

FortiGate-7000 overview

A FortiGate-7000 product consists of a FortiGate-7000 series chassis (for example, the FortiGate-7040E) with FortiGate-7000 modules installed in the chassis slots. A FortiGate-7040E chassis comes with two interface modules (FIMs) to be installed in slots 1 and 2 to provide network connections and session-aware load balancing to two processor modules (FPMs) to be installed in slots 3 and 4.

FortiGate-7000 products are sold and licensed as packages that include the chassis as well as the modules to be included in the chassis. When you receive your FortiGate-7000 series product the chassis has to be installed in a rack and the modules installed in the chassis. Interface modules always go in slots 1 and 2 and processor modules in slots 3 and up.

If your FortiGate-7000 product includes two different interfaces modules, for optimal configuration you should install the module with the lower model number in slot 1 and the module with the higher model number in slot 2. For example, if your chassis includes a FIM-7901E and a FIM-7904E, install the FIM-7901E in chassis slot 1 and the FIM-7904E in chassis slot 2. This applies to any combination of two different interface modules.

As an administrator, when you browse to the FortiGate-7000 management IP address you log into the FIM in slot 1 (the primary interface module or FIM) to view the status of the FortiGate-7000 and make configuration changes. The FortiOS firmware running on each FIM and FPM has the same configuration and when you make configuration changes to the primary FIM, the configuration changes are synchronized to all FIMs and FPMs.

The same FortiOS firmware build runs on each FIM and FPM in the chassis. You can upgrade FortiGate-7000 firmware by logging into the primary FIM and performing a firmware upgrade as you would for any FortiGate. During the upgrade process, the firmware of all of the FIMs and FPMs in the chassis upgrades in one step. Firmware upgrades should be done during a quiet time because traffic will briefly be interrupted during the upgrade process.

Licenses, device registration, and support

A FortiGate-7000 product is made up of a FortiGate-7000 series chassis, one or two FIMs and two to four FPMs. The entire package is licensed and configured as a single product under the FortiGate-7000 chassis serial number. When you receive a new FortiGate-7000 product, you register it on <https://support.fortinet.com> using the chassis serial number. Use the chassis serial number when requesting support from Fortinet.

All Fortinet licensing, including FortiCare Support, IPS, AntiVirus, Web Filtering, Mobile Malware, FortiClient, FortiCloud, and additional virtual domains (VDOM) is for the entire FortiGate-7000 product and not for individual components.

If an individual component, such as a single FIM or FPM fails you can RMA and replace just that component.

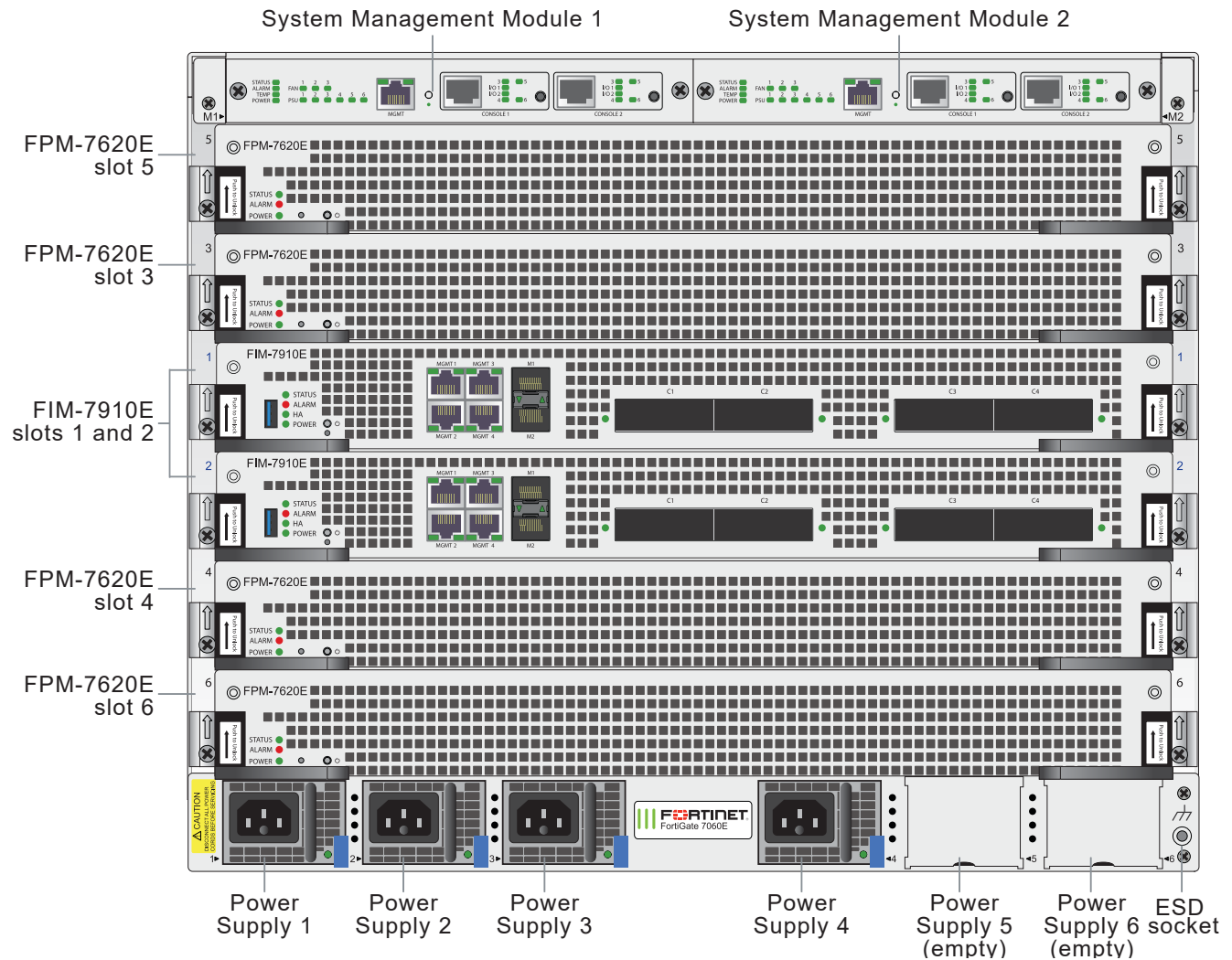
FortiGate-7060E

The FortiGate-7060E is a 8U 19-inch rackmount 6-slot chassis with a 80Gbps fabric and 1Gbps base backplane designed by Fortinet. The fabric backplane provides network data communication and the base backplane provides management and synch communication among the chassis slots.

FortiGate-7060E front panel

The chassis is managed by two redundant System Management Modules (SMM). Each module includes an Ethernet connection as well as two switchable console ports that provide console connections to the modules in the chassis slots. The active SMM controls chassis cooling and power management and provides an interface for managing the modules installed in the chassis.

FortiGate-7060E front panel, (example module configuration)

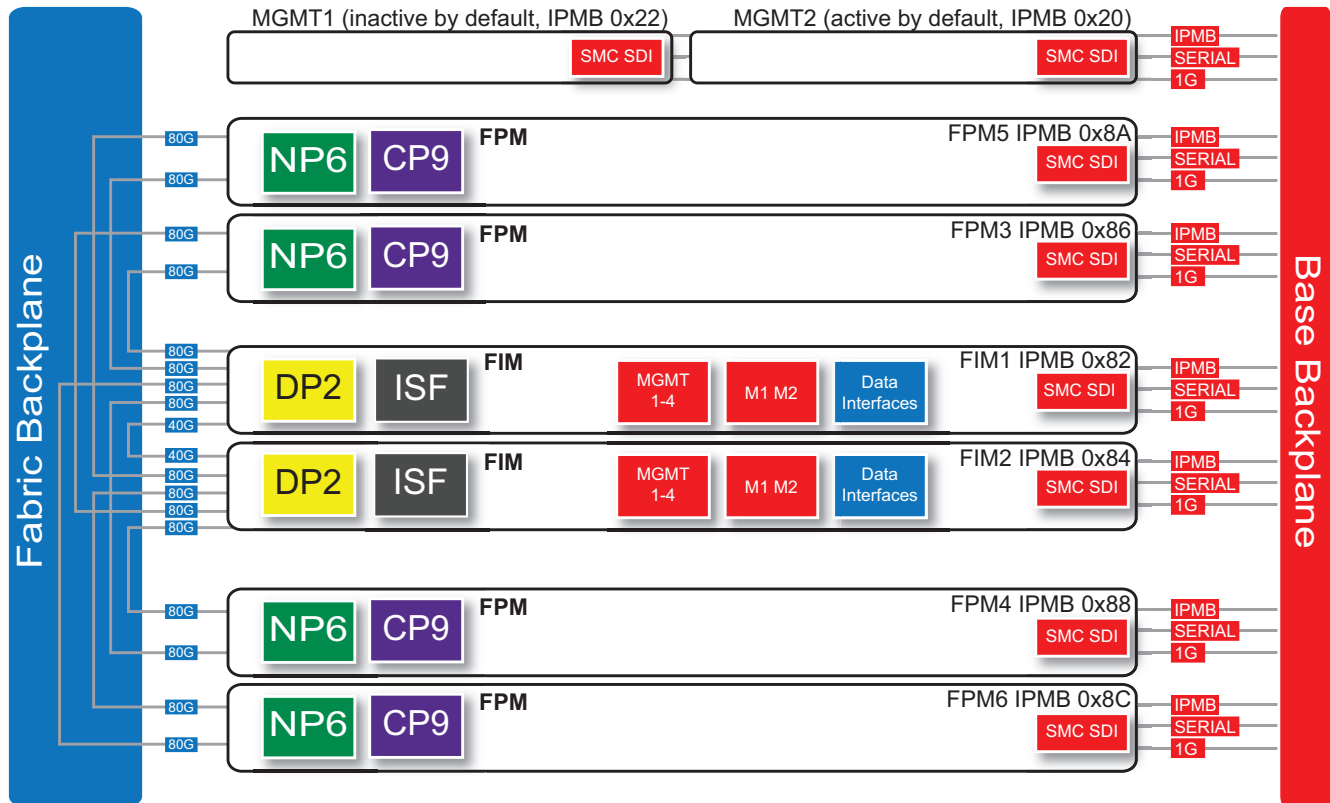


Power is provided to the chassis using four hot swappable 3+1 redundant 100-240 VAC, 50-60 Hz power supply units (PSUs). You can also optionally add up to six PSUs to provide 3+3 redundancy. The FortiGate-7060E can also be equipped with DC PSUs allowing you to connect the chassis to -48V DC power.

The standard configuration of the FortiGate-7060E includes two FIM (interface) modules in chassis slots 1 and 2 and up to four FPM (processing) modules in chassis slots 3 to 6.

FortiGate-7060E schematic

The FortiGate-7060E chassis schematic below shows the communication channels between chassis components including the SMMs (MGMT), the FIMs (called FIM1 and FIM2) and the FPMs (FPM3, FPM4, FPM5, and FPM6).



By default, MGMT2 is the active SMM and MGMT1 is inactive. The active SMM always has the Intelligent Platform Management Bus (IPMB) address 0x20 and the inactive SMM always has the IPMB address 0x22.

The active SMM communicates with all modules in the chassis over the base backplane. Each module, including the SMMs has a Shelf Management Controller (SMC). These SMCs support IPMB communication between the active SMM and the FIM and FPMs for storing and sharing sensor data that the SMM uses to control chassis cooling and power distribution. The base backplane also supports serial communications to allow console access from the SMM to all modules, and 1Gbps Ethernet communication for management and heartbeat communication between modules.

FIM1 and FIM2 (IPMB addresses 0x82 and 0x84) are the FIMs in slots 1 and 2. The interfaces of these modules connect the chassis to data networks and can be used for Ethernet management access to chassis components. The FIMs include DP2 processors that distribute sessions over the Integrated Switch Fabric (ISF) to the NP6 processors in the FPMs. Data sessions are communicated to the FPMs over the 80Gbps chassis fabric backplane.

FPM03, FPM04, FPM05, and FPM06 (IPMB addresses 0x86, 0x88, 0x8A, and 0x8C) are the FPM processor modules in slots 3 to 6. These worker modules process sessions distributed to them by the FIMs. FPMs include NP6 processors to offload sessions from the FPM CPU and CP9 processors that accelerate content processing.

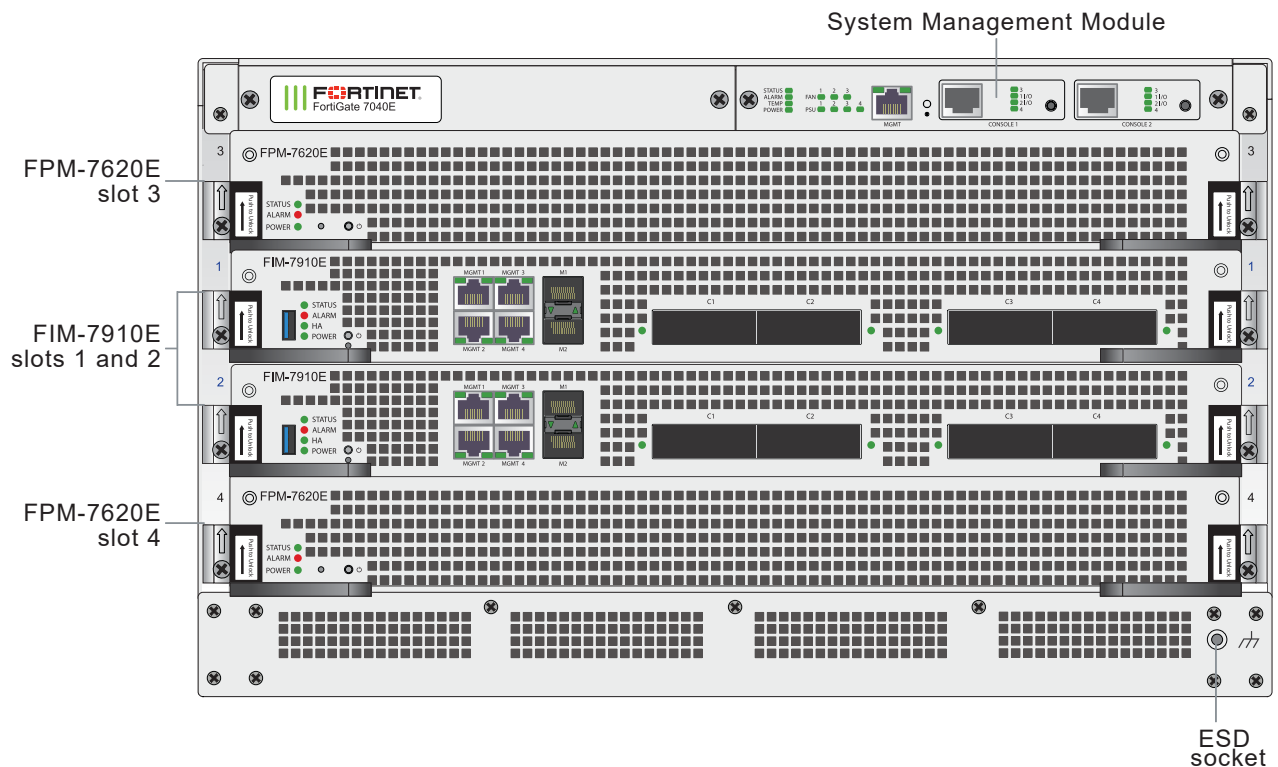
FortiGate-7040E

The FortiGate-7040E is a 6U 19-inch rackmount 4-slot chassis with a 80Gbps fabric and 1Gbps base backplane designed by Fortinet. The fabric backplane provides network data communication and the base backplane provides management and synch communication among the chassis slots.

FortiGate-7040E front panel

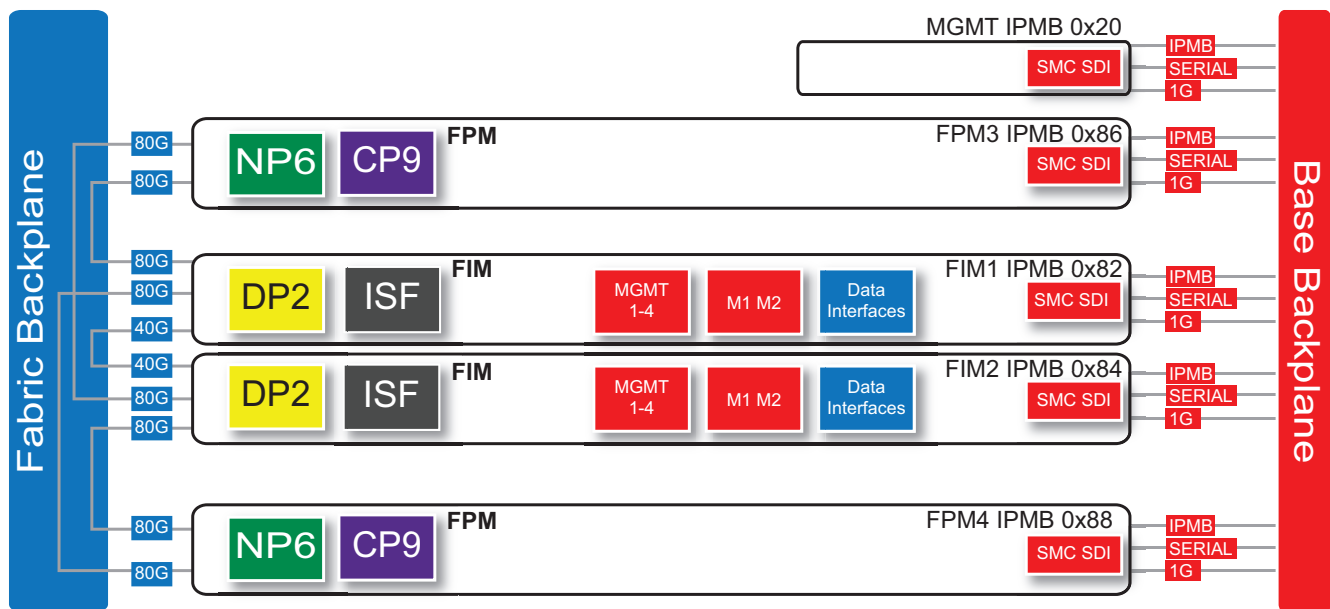
The FortiGate-7040E chassis is managed by a single System Management Module (SMM) that includes an Ethernet connection as well as two switchable console ports that provide console connections to the modules in the chassis slots. The SMM controls chassis cooling and power management and provides an interface for managing the modules installed in the chassis. The standard configuration of the FortiGate-7040E includes two FIM (interface) modules in chassis slots 1 and 2 and two FPM (processing) modules in chassis slots 3 and 4.

FortiGate-7040E front panel



FortiGate-7040E schematic

The FortiGate-7040E chassis schematic below shows the communication channels between chassis components including the System Management Module (MGMT), the FIMs (called FIM1 and FIM2) and the FPMs (FPM3 and FPM4).



The SMM (MGMT), with Intelligent Platform Management Bus (IPMB) address 0x20) communicates with all modules in the chassis over the base backplane. Each module, including the SMM, includes a Shelf Management Controller (SMC). These SMCs support IPMB communication between the SMM and the FIM and FPMs for storing and sharing sensor data that the SMM uses to control chassis cooling and power distribution. The base backplane also supports serial communications to allow console access from the SMM to all modules, and 1Gbps Ethernet communication for management and heartbeat communication between modules.

FIM1 and FIM2 (IPMB addresses 0x82 and 0x84) are the FIMs in slots 1 and 2. The interfaces of these modules connect the chassis to data networks and can be used for Ethernet management access to chassis components. The FIMs include DP2 processors that distribute sessions over the Integrated Switch Fabric (ISF) to the NP6 processors in the FPMs. Data sessions are communicated to the FPMs over the 80Gbps chassis fabric backplane.

FPM3 and FPM4 (IPMB addresses 0x86 and 0x88) are the FPM processor modules in slots 3 and 4. These worker modules process sessions distributed to them by the FIMs. FPMs include NP6 processors to offload sessions from the FPM CPU and CP9 processors that accelerate content processing.

FortiGate-7030E

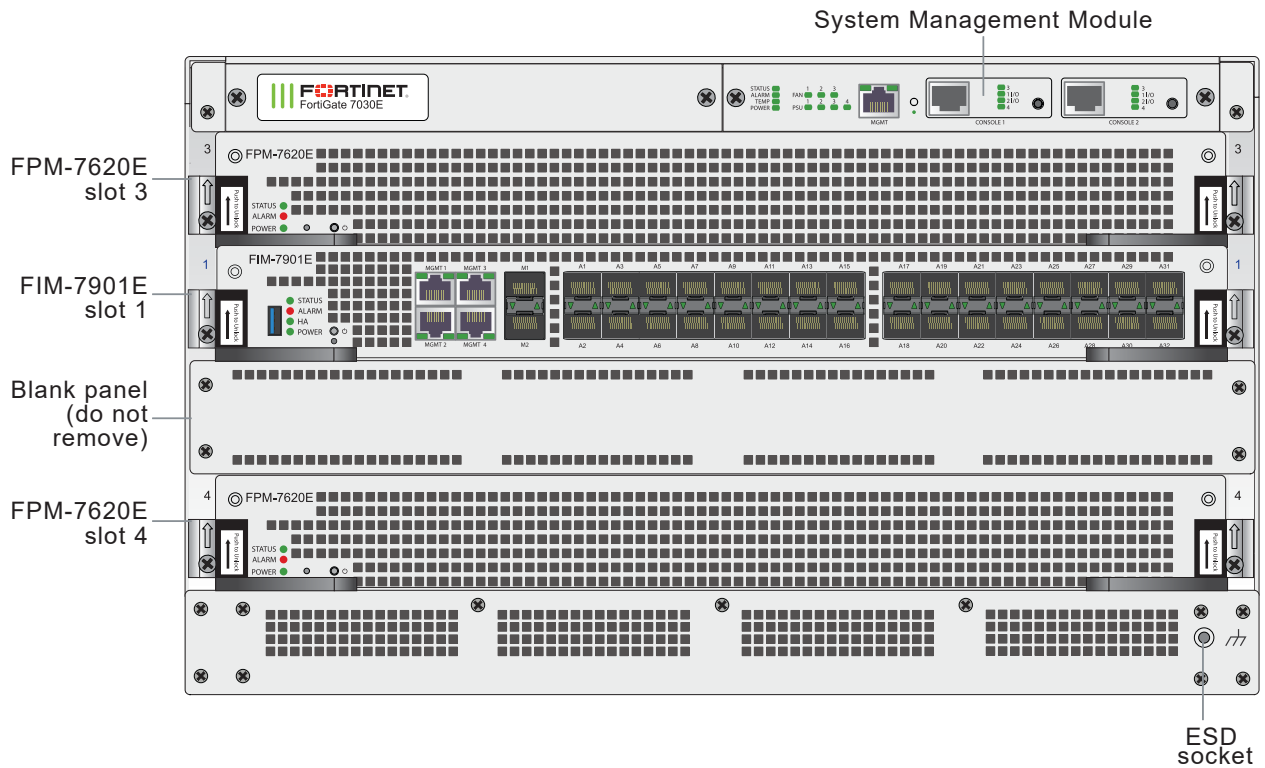
The FortiGate-7030E is a 6U 19-inch rackmount 3-slot chassis with a 80Gbps fabric and 1Gbps base backplane designed by Fortinet. The fabric backplane provides network data communication and the base backplane provides management and synch communication among the chassis slots.

FortiGate-7030E front panel

The FortiGate-7030E chassis is managed by a single System Management Module (SMM) that includes an Ethernet connection as well as two switchable console ports that provide console connections to the modules in the chassis slots. The SMM controls chassis cooling and power management and provides an interface for managing the modules installed in the chassis. The standard configuration of the FortiGate-7030E includes one FIM (interface) module in

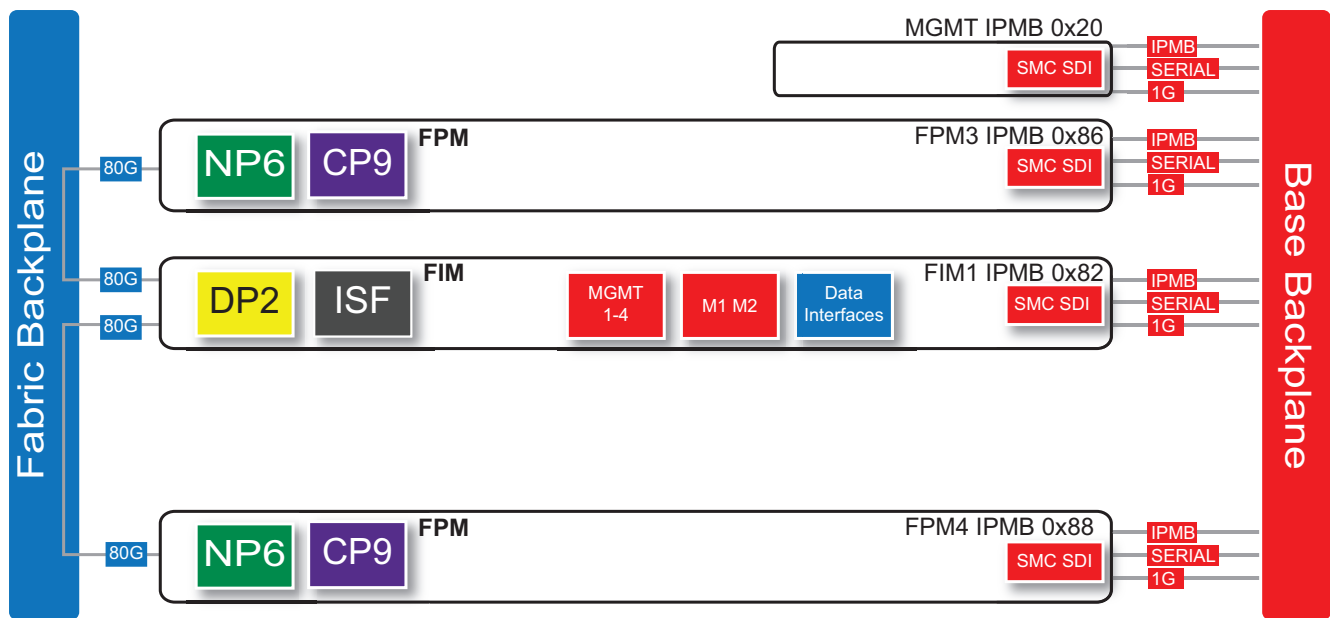
chassis slot 1 and two FPM (processing) modules in chassis slots 3 and 4. The front panel also includes a sealed blank panel. Breaking the seal or removing the panel voids your FortiGate-7030E warranty.

FortiGate-7030E front panel (example module configuration)



FortiGate-7030E schematic

The FortiGate-7030E chassis schematic below shows the communication channels between chassis components including the System Management Module (MGMT), the FIM (called FIM1) and the FPMs (FPM3 and FPM4).



The SMM (MGMT), with Intelligent Platform Management Bus (IPMB) address 0x20) communicates with all modules in the chassis over the base backplane. Each module, including the SMM includes a Shelf Management Controller (SMC). These SMCs support IPMB communication between the SMM and the FIM and FPMs for storing and sharing sensor data that the SMM uses to control chassis cooling and power distribution. The base backplane also supports serial communications to allow console access from the SMM to all modules, and 1Gbps Ethernet communication for management and heartbeat communication between modules.

FIM1 (IPMB address 0x82) is the FIM in slot 1. The interfaces of this module connect the chassis to data networks and can be used for Ethernet management access to chassis components. The FIM includes DP2 processors that distribute sessions over the Integrated Switch Fabric (ISF) to the NP6 processors in the FPMs. Data sessions are communicated to the FPMs over the 80Gbps chassis fabric backplane.

FPM3 and FPM4 (IPMB addresses 0x86 and 0x88) are the FPM processor modules in slots 3 and 4. These worker modules process sessions distributed to them by the FIM. FPMs include NP6 processors to offload sessions from the FPM CPU and CP9 processors that accelerate content processing.

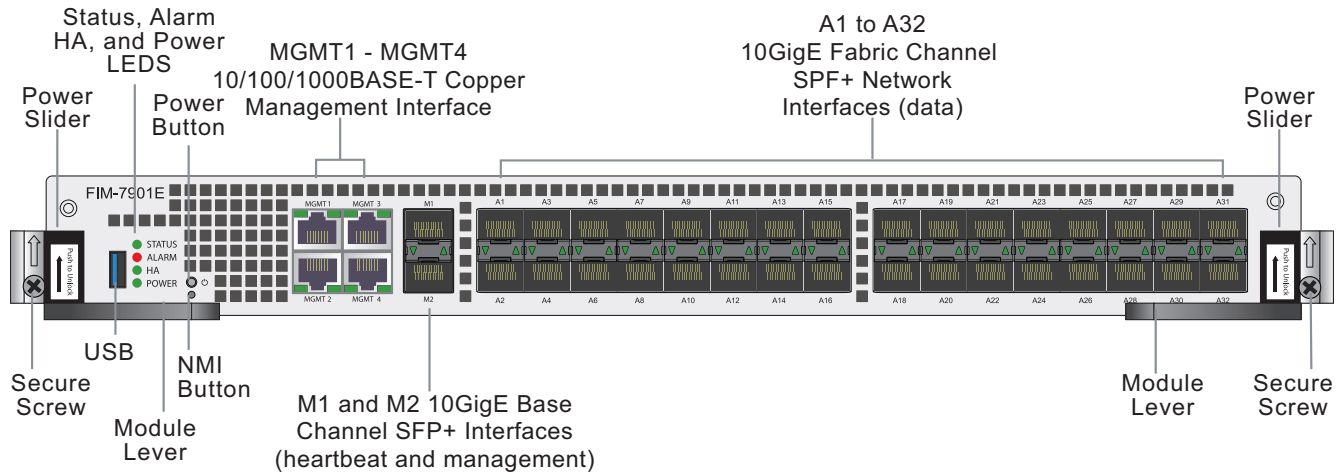
FIM-7901E interface module

The FIM-7901E interface module is a hot swappable module that provides data, management, and session sync/heartbeat interfaces, base backplane switching, and fabric backplane session-aware load balancing for a FortiGate-7000E series chassis. The FIM-7901E includes an integrated switch fabric and DP2 processors to load balance millions of data sessions over the chassis fabric backplane to FPM processor modules. The FIM-7901E also includes a 1Gbps base backplane channel for base backplane management communication with each FPM module in the chassis, one 40Gbps fabric backplane channel for fabric backplane communication with the FIM module(s) in the chassis, and a second 1Gbps base backplane channel for base backplane communication with the FIM module(s) in the chassis.

The FIM-7901E can be installed in any FortiGate-7000E series chassis in chassis hub/switch slots 1 or 2. The FIM-7901E provides thirty-two 10GigE small form-factor pluggable plus (SPF+) interfaces for a FortiGate-7000E chassis.

You can also install FIM-7901Es in a second chassis and operate the chassis in HA mode to provide chassis failover protection.

FIM-7901E front panel



FIM-7901E front panel interfaces

You connect the FIM-7901E to your 10Gbps networks using the A1 to A32 front panel SFP+ interfaces. The front panel also includes M1 and M2 SFP+ interfaces for the base channel, four Ethernet management interfaces (MGMT1 to MGMT4), and a USB port. The USB port can be used with any USB key for backing up and restoring configuration files.

Connector	Type	Speed	Protocol	Description
A1 to A32	SPF+	10Gbps/1Gpbs	Ethernet	Thirty-two front panel 10GigE SFP+ fabric channel interfaces. These interfaces are connected to 10Gbps networks to distribute sessions to the FPM processor modules installed in chassis slots 3 and up. These interfaces can also be configured to operate as Gigabit Ethernet interfaces using SFP transceivers. These interfaces also support creating link aggregation groups (LAGs) that can include interfaces from both FIM-7901Es.
M1 and M2	SFP+	10Gbps/1Gpbs	Ethernet	Two front panel 10GigE SFP+ interfaces that connect to the base backplane channel. These interfaces are used for heartbeat, session sync, and management communication between FIM-7901Es in different chassis. These interfaces can also be configured to operate as Gigabit Ethernet interfaces using SFP transceivers, but should not normally be changed. If you use switches

Connector	Type	Speed	Protocol	Description
				to connect these interfaces, the switch ports should be able to accept packets with a maximum frame size of at least 1526. The M1 and M2 interfaces need to be on different broadcast domains. If M1 and M2 are connected to the same switch, Q-in-Q must be enabled on the switch
MGMT1 to MGMT4	RJ-45	10/100/1000Mbps	Ethernet	Four 10/100/1000BASE-T copper out of band management Ethernet interfaces.
USB	USB 3.0 Type A		USB 3.0 USB 2.0	Standard USB connector.

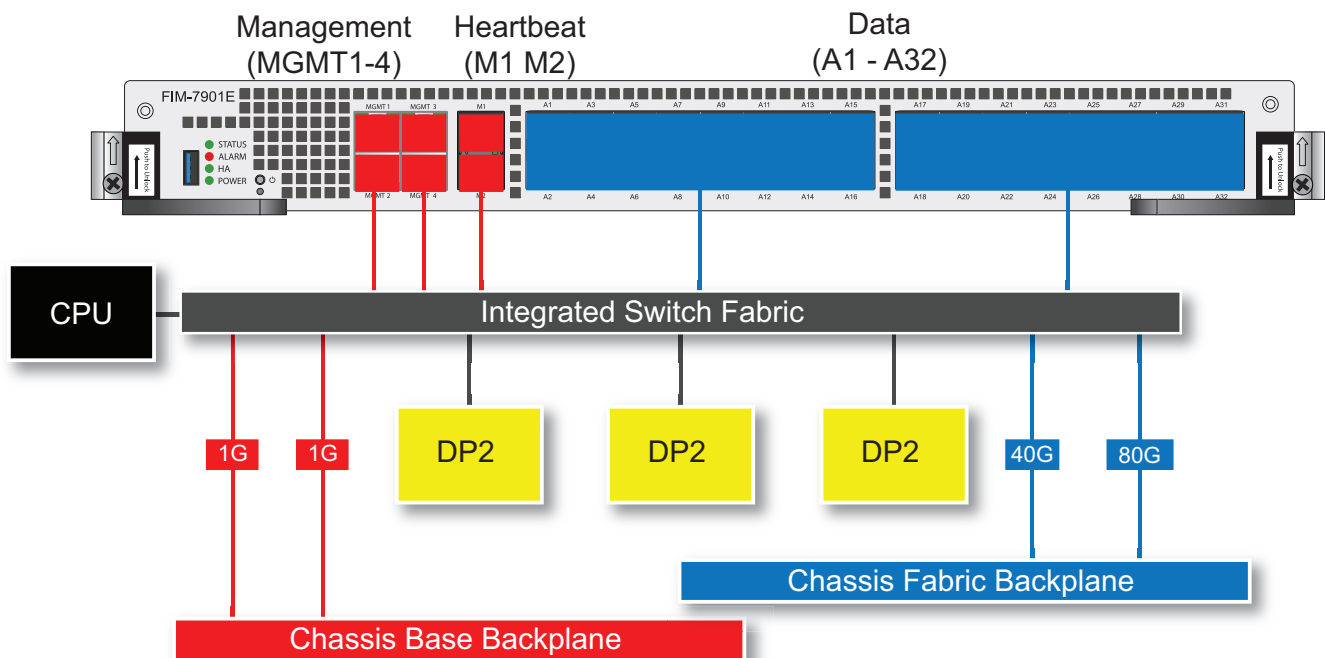
FIM-7901E schematic

The FIM-7901E includes an integrated switch fabric (ISF) that connects the front panel interfaces to the DP2 session-aware load balancers and to the chassis backplanes. The ISF also allows the DP2 processors to distribute sessions among all NP6 processors on the FPM modules in the same chassis.

The FIM-7901E also includes the following backplane communication channels:

- One 80Gbps fabric backplane channel to distribute traffic to the FPMs.
- One 1Gbps base backplane channel for base backplane communication with the FPMs.
- One 40Gbps fabric backplane channel for fabric backplane communication with the other FIM.
- One 1Gbps base backplane channel for base backplane communication with the other FIM.

FIM-7901E hardware architecture



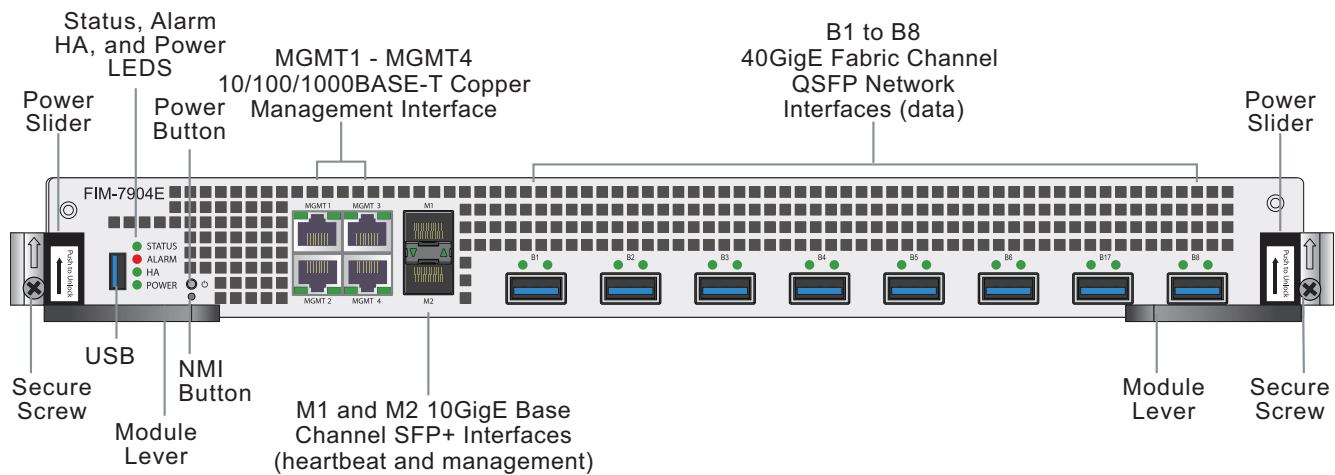
FIM-7904E interface module

The FIM-7904E interface module is a hot swappable module that provides data, management, and session sync/heartbeat interfaces, base backplane switching, and fabric backplane session-aware load balancing for a FortiGate-7000E series chassis. The FIM-7904E includes an integrated switch fabric and DP2 processors to load balance millions of data sessions over the chassis fabric backplane to FPM processor modules. The FIM-7904E also includes a 1Gbps base backplane channel for base backplane management communication with each FPM module in the chassis, one 40Gbps fabric backplane channel for fabric backplane communication with the FIM module(s) in the chassis, and a second 1Gbps base backplane channel for base backplane communication with the FIM module(s) in the chassis.

The FIM-7904E can be installed in any FortiGate-7000E series chassis in chassis hub/switch slots 1 or 2. The FIM-7904E provides four Quad Small Form-factor Pluggable plus (QSFP+) interfaces for a FortiGate-7000E chassis. Using a 40GBASE-SR10 multimode QSFP+ transceiver, each QSFP+ interface can also be split into four 10GBASE-SR interfaces.

You can also install FIM-7904Es in a second chassis and operate the chassis in HA mode to provide chassis failover protection.

FIM-7904E front panel



FIM-7904E front panel interfaces

You connect the FIM-7904E to your 40Gbps networks using the B1 to B8 front panel QSFP+ interfaces. The front panel also includes M1 and M2 SFP+ interfaces for the base channel, four Ethernet management interfaces (MGMT1 to MGMT4), and a USB port. The USB port can be used with any USB key for backing up and restoring configuration files.

Connector	Type	Speed	Protocol	Description
B1 to B8	QSFP+	40Gbps/10Gbps	Ethernet	Eight front panel 40GigE QSFP+ fabric channel interfaces. These interfaces are connected to 40Gbps networks to distribute sessions to the FPM processor modules installed in chassis slots 3 and up. Using 40GBASE-SR10 multimode QSFP+ transceivers, each QSFP+ interface can also be split into four 10GBASE-SR interfaces. These interfaces also support creating link aggregation groups (LAGs) that can include interfaces from both FIM-7904Es.
M1 and M2	SFP+	10Gbps/1Gbps	Ethernet	Two front panel 10GigE SFP+ interfaces that connect to the base backplane channel. These interfaces are used for heartbeat, session sync, and management communication between FIM-7904Es in different chassis. These interfaces can also be configured to operate as Gigabit Ethernet interfaces using SFP transceivers, but should not normally be changed. If you use switches to connect these interfaces, the switch ports should be able to accept packets with a

Connector	Type	Speed	Protocol	Description
				maximum frame size of at least 1526. The M1 and M2 interfaces need to be on different broadcast domains. If M1 and M2 are connected to the same switch, Q-in-Q must be enabled on the switch
MGMT1 to MGMT4	RJ-45	10/100/1000Mbps	Ethernet	Four 10/100/1000BASE-T copper out of band management Ethernet interfaces.
USB	USB 3.0 Type A		USB 3.0 USB 2.0	Standard USB connector.

Splitting the FIM-7904E B1 to B8 interfaces

Each 40GE interface (B1 to B8) on the FIM-7904Es in slot 1 and slot 2 of a FortiGate-7000E system can be split into 4x10GBE interfaces. You split these interfaces after the FIM-7904Es are installed in your FortiGate-7000E system and the system is up and running. You can split the interfaces of the FIM-7904Es in slot 1 and slot 2 at the same time by entering a single CLI command. Enabling, disabling, or changing the split interfaces configuration requires a system reboot. Fortinet recommends that you split multiple interfaces at the same time according to your requirements to avoid traffic disruption.



You should configure split interfaces or change interfaces types on both FortiGate-7000s before forming an FGCP HA cluster. If you decide to change the split interfaces or interface type configuration after forming a cluster, you need to remove the backup FortiGate-7000 from the cluster and change interface configuration on both FortiGate-7000s separately. After the FortiGate-7000s restart, you can re-form the cluster. This process will cause traffic interruptions.

For example, to split the B1 interface of the FIM-7904E in slot 1 (this interface is named 1-B1) and the B1 and B4 interfaces of the FIM-7904E in slot 2 (these interfaces are named 2-B1 and 2-B4) connect to the CLI of your FortiGate-7000E system using the management IP and enter the following command:

```
config system global
    set split-port 1-B1 2-B1 2-B4
end
```

After you enter the command, the FortiGate-7000E reboots and when it comes up:

- The 1-B1 interface will no longer be available. Instead the 1-B1/1, 1-B1/2, 1-B1/3, and 1-B1/4 interfaces will be available.
- The 2-B1 interface will no longer be available. Instead the 2-B1/1, 2-B1/2, 2-B1/3, and 2-B1/4 interfaces will be available.
- The 2-B4 interface will no longer be available. Instead the 2-B4/1, 2-B4/2, 2-B4/3, and 2-B4/4 interfaces will be available.

You can now connect breakout cables to these interfaces and configure traffic between them just like any other FortiGate interface.

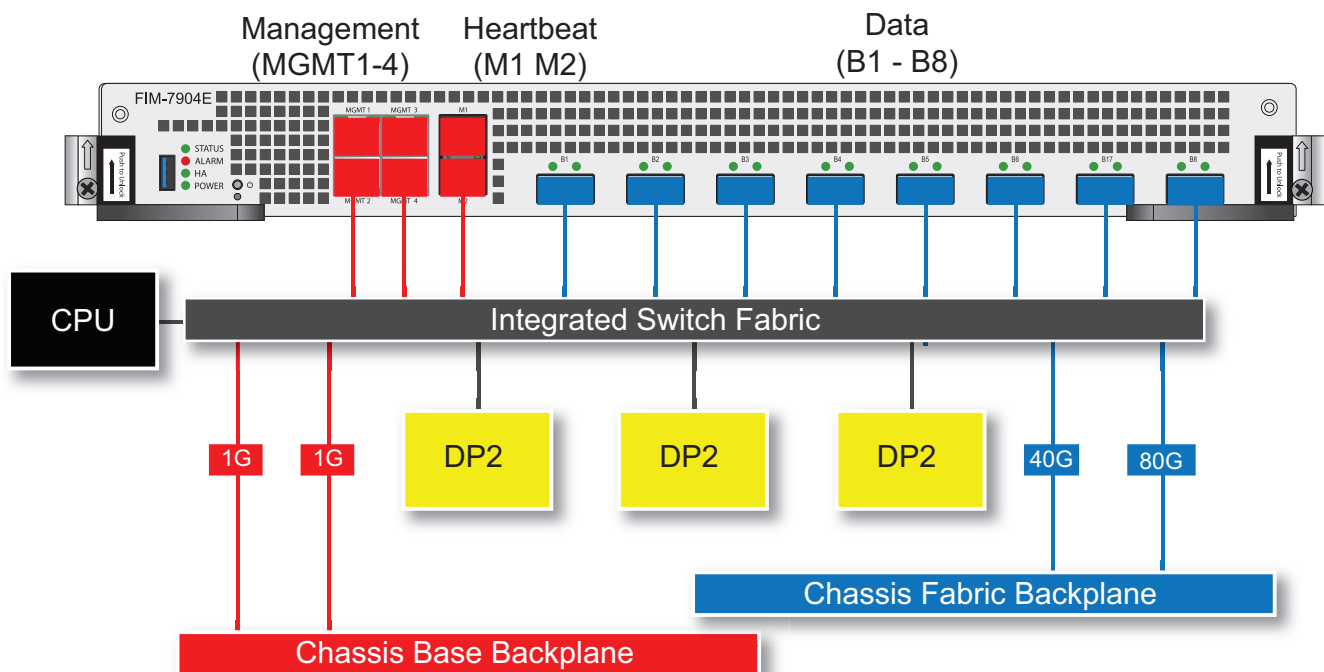
FIM-7904E hardware schematic

The FIM-7904E includes an integrated switch fabric (ISF) that connects the front panel interfaces to the DP2 session-aware load balancers and to the chassis backplanes. The ISF also allows the DP2 processors to distribute sessions among all NP6 processors on the FPM modules in the same chassis.

The FIM-7904E also includes the following backplane communication channels:

- One 80Gbps fabric backplane channel to distribute traffic to the FPMs.
- One 1Gbps base backplane channel for base backplane communication with the FPMs.
- One 40Gbps fabric backplane channel for fabric backplane communication with the other FIM.
- One 1Gbps base backplane channel for base backplane communication with the other FIM.

FIM-7904E hardware architecture



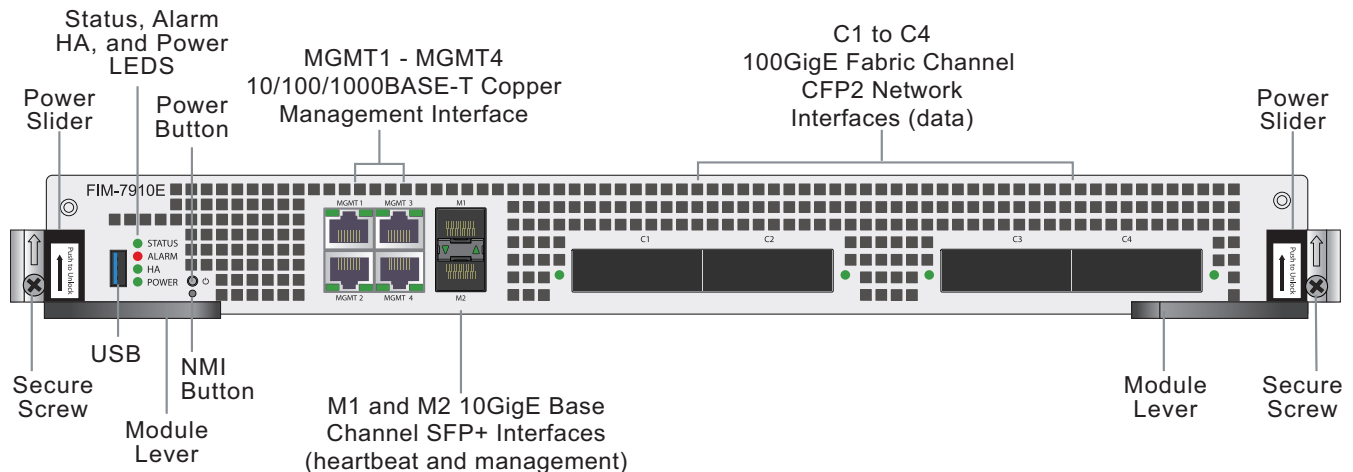
FIM-7910E interface module

The FIM-7910E interface module is a hot swappable module that provides data, management, and session sync/heartbeat interfaces, base backplane switching, and fabric backplane session-aware load balancing for a FortiGate-7000E series chassis. The FIM-7910E includes an integrated switch fabric and DP2 processors to load balance millions of data sessions over the 80Gbps fabric backplane channel to FPM processor modules. The FIM-7910E also includes a 1Gbps base backplane channel for base backplane management communication with each FPM module in the chassis, one 40Gbps fabric backplane channel for fabric backplane communication with the FIM module(s) in the chassis, and a second 1Gbps base backplane channel for base backplane communication with the FIM module(s) in the chassis.

The FIM-7910E can be installed in any FortiGate-7000E series chassis in chassis hub/switch slots 1 or 2. The FIM-7910E provides four C form-factor pluggable 2 (CFP2) interfaces for a FortiGate-7000E chassis. Using a 100GBASE-SR10 multimode CFP2 transceiver, each CFP2 interface can also be split into ten 10GBASE-SR SFP+ interfaces.

You can also install FIM-7910Es in a second chassis and operate the chassis in HA mode to provide chassis failover protection.

FIM-7910E front panel



FIM-7910E front panel interfaces

You connect the FIM-7910E to your 100Gbps networks using the C1 to C4 front panel CFP2 interfaces. The front panel also includes M1 and M2 SFP+ interfaces for the base channel, four Ethernet management interfaces (MGMT1 to MGMT4), and a USB port. The USB port can be used with any USB key for backing up and restoring configuration files.

Connector	Type	Speed	Protocol	Description
C1 to C4	CFP2	100Gbps/10Gbps	Ethernet	Four front panel 100GigE CFP2 fabric channel interfaces (C1 to C4). These interfaces are connected to 100Gbps networks to distribute sessions to the FPM processor modules installed in chassis slots 3 and up. Using 100GBASE-SR10 multimode CFP2 transceivers, each CFP2 interface can also be split into ten 10GBASE-SR SFP+ interfaces. These interfaces also support creating link aggregation groups (LAGs) that can include interfaces from both FIM-7910Es.
M1 and M2	SFP+	10Gbps/1Gbps	Ethernet	Two front panel 10GigE SFP+ interfaces that connect to the base backplane channel. These interfaces are used for heartbeat, session sync, and management

Connector	Type	Speed	Protocol	Description
				communication between FIM-7910Es in different chassis. These interfaces can also be configured to operate as Gigabit Ethernet interfaces using SFP transceivers, but should not normally be changed. If you use switches to connect these interfaces, the switch ports should be able to accept packets with a maximum frame size of at least 1526. The M1 and M2 interfaces need to be on different broadcast domains. If M1 and M2 are connected to the same switch, Q-in-Q must be enabled on the switch
MGMT1 to MGMT4	RJ-45	10/100/1000Mbps	Ethernet	Four 10/100/1000BASE-T copper out of band management Ethernet interfaces.
USB	USB 3.0 Type A		USB 3.0 USB 2.0	Standard USB connector.

Splitting the FIM-7910E C1 to C4 interfaces

Each 100GE interface (C1 to C4) on the FIM-7910Es in slot 1 and slot 2 of a FortiGate-7000E system can be split into 10 x 10GBE SFP+ interfaces. You split these interfaces after the FIM-7910Es are installed in your FortiGate-7000E system and the system is up and running. You can split the interfaces of the FIM-7910Es in slot 1 and slot 2 at the same time by entering a single CLI command. Enabling, disabling, or changing the split interfaces configuration requires a system reboot. Fortinet recommends that you split multiple interfaces at the same time according to your requirements to avoid traffic disruption.



You should configure split interfaces or change interface types on both FortiGate-7000s before forming an FGCP HA cluster. If you decide to change the split interfaces or interface type configuration after forming a cluster, you need to remove the backup FortiGate-7000 from the cluster and change interface configuration on both FortiGate-7000s separately. After the FortiGate-7000s restart, you can re-form the cluster. This process will cause traffic interruptions.

For example, to split the C1 interface of the FIM-7910E in slot 1 (this interface is named 1-C1) and the C1 and C4 interfaces of the FIM-7910E in slot 2 (these interfaces are named 2-C1 and 2-C4) connect to the CLI of your FortiGate-7000E system using the management IP and enter the following command:

```
config system global
    set split-port 1-C1 2-C1 2-C4
end
```

After you enter the command, the FortiGate-7000E reboots and when it comes up:

- The 1-C1 interface will no longer be available. Instead the 1-C1/1, 1-C1/2, ..., and 1-C1/10 interfaces will be available.

- The 2-C1 interface will no longer be available. Instead the 2-C1/1, 2-C1/2, ..., and 2-C1/10 interfaces will be available.
- The 2-C4 interface will no longer be available. Instead the 2-C4/1, 2-C4/2, ..., and 2-C4/10 interfaces will be available.

You can now connect breakout cables to these interfaces and configure traffic between them just like any other FortiGate interface.

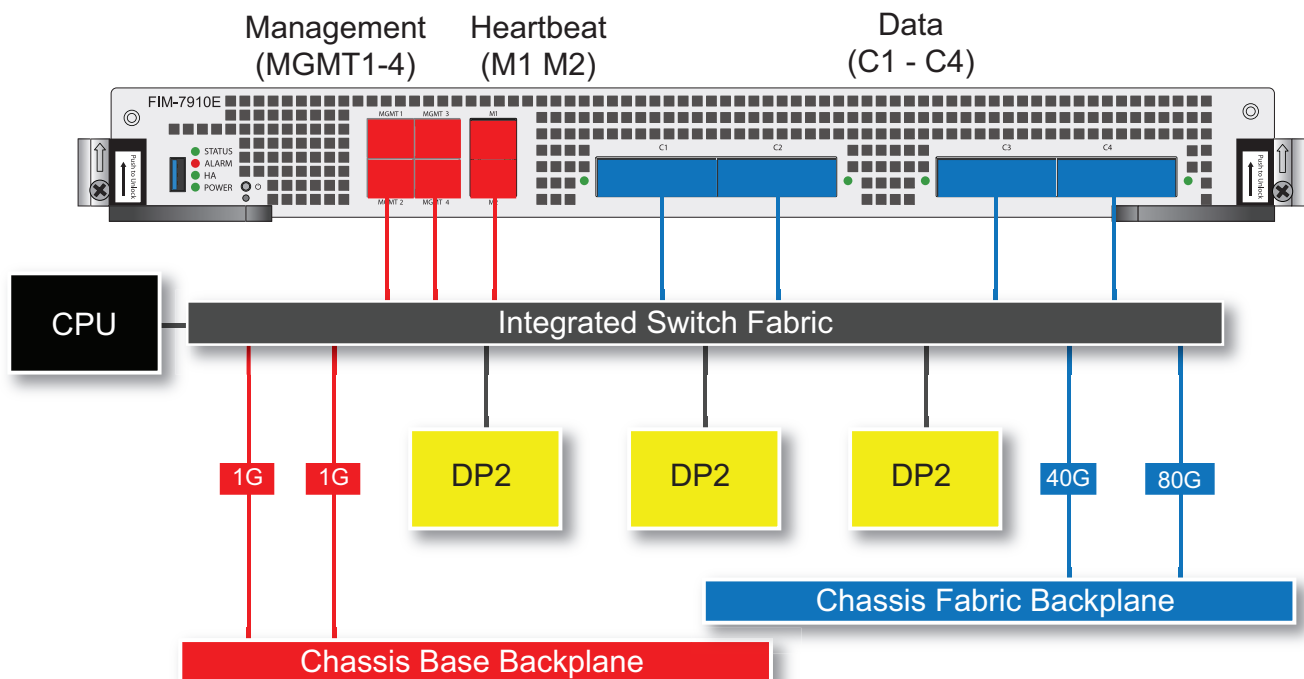
FIM-7910E hardware schematic

The FIM-7910E includes an integrated switch fabric (ISF) that connects the front panel interfaces to the DP2 session-aware load balancers and to the chassis backplanes. The ISF also allows the DP2 processors to distribute sessions among all NP6 processors on the FPM modules in the same chassis.

The FIM-7910E also includes the following backplane communication channels:

- One 80Gbps fabric backplane channel to distribute traffic to the FPMs.
- One 1Gbps base backplane channel for base backplane communication with the FPMs.
- One 40Gbps fabric backplane channel for fabric backplane communication with the other FIM.
- One 1Gbps base backplane channel for base backplane communication with the other FIM.

FIM-7910E hardware architecture



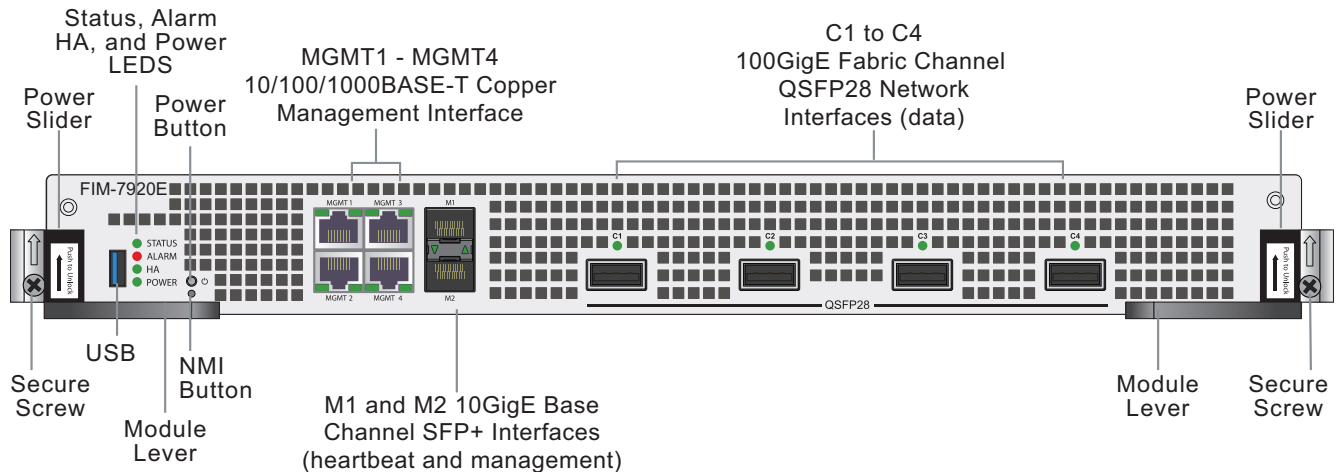
FIM-7920E interface module

The FIM-7920E interface module is a hot swappable module that provides data, management, and session sync/heartbeat interfaces, base backplane switching, and fabric backplane session-aware load balancing for a FortiGate-7000E series chassis. The FIM-7920E includes an integrated switch fabric and DP2 processors to load balance millions of data sessions over the 80Gbps fabric backplane channel to FPM processor modules. The FIM-7920E also includes a 1Gbps base backplane channel for base backplane management communication with each FPM module in the chassis, one 40Gbps fabric backplane channel for fabric backplane communication with the FIM module(s) in the chassis, and a second 1Gbps base backplane channel for base backplane communication with the FIM module(s) in the chassis.

The FIM-7920E can be installed in any FortiGate-7000E series chassis in chassis hub/switch slots 1 or 2. The FIM-7920E provides four Quad Small Form-factor Pluggable 28 (QSFP28) 100GigE interfaces for a FortiGate-7000E chassis. Using a 100GBASE-SR4 QSFP28 or 40GBASE-SR4 QSFP+ transceiver, each QSFP28 interface can also be split into four 10GBASE-SR SFP+ interfaces.

You can also install FIM-7920Es in a second chassis and operate the chassis in HA mode to provide chassis failover protection.

FIM-7920E front panel



FIM-7920E front panel interfaces

You connect the FIM-7920E to your 100Gbps networks using the C1 to C4 front panel QSFP28 interfaces. The front panel also includes M1 and M2 SFP+ interfaces for the base channel, four Ethernet management interfaces (MGMT1 to MGMT4), and a USB port. The USB port can be used with any USB key for backing up and restoring configuration files.

Connector	Type	Speed	Protocol	Description
C1 to C4	QSFP28	100Gbps/40Gbps/10Gbps	Ethernet	Four front panel 100GigE QSFP28 fabric channel interfaces that can be connected to 100Gbps networks to

Connector	Type	Speed	Protocol	Description
				distribute sessions to the FPM processor modules installed in chassis slots 3 and up. Using a 100GBASE-SR4 QSFP28 or 40GBASE-SR4 QSFP+ transceiver, each QSFP28 interface can also be split into four 10GBASE-SR interfaces. These interfaces also support creating link aggregation groups (LAGs) that can include interfaces from multiple FIM-7920Es.
M1 and M2	SFP+	10Gbps/1Gbps	Ethernet	Two front panel 10GigE SFP+ interfaces that connect to the base backplane channel. These interfaces are used for heartbeat, session sync, and management communication between FIM-7920Es in different chassis. These interfaces can also be configured to operate as Gigabit Ethernet interfaces using SFP transceivers, but should not normally be changed. If you use switches to connect these interfaces, the switch ports should be able to accept packets with a maximum frame size of at least 1526. The M1 and M2 interfaces need to be on different broadcast domains. If M1 and M2 are connected to the same switch, Q-in-Q must be enabled on the switch
MGMT1 to MGMT4	RJ-45	10/100/1000Mbps	Ethernet	Four 10/100/1000BASE-T copper out of band management Ethernet interfaces.
USB	USB 3.0 Type A		USB 3.0 USB 2.0	Standard USB connector.

Changing the interface type and splitting the FIM-7920E C1 to C4 interfaces

By default, the FIM-7920E C1 to C4 interfaces are configured as 100GE QSFP28 interfaces. You can use the following command to convert them to 40GE QSFP+ interfaces. Once converted, you can use the other command below to split them into four 10GBASE-SR interfaces.



You should change the interface type and configure split interfaces on both FortiGate-7000Es before forming an FGCP HA cluster. If you decide to change the split interfaces configuration after forming a cluster, you need to remove the backup FortiGate-7000E from the cluster and change the split interfaces configuration on both FortiGate-7000Es separately. After the FortiGate-7000Es restart, you can re-form the cluster. This process will cause traffic interruptions.

Changing the interface type

For example, to change the interface type of the C1 interface of the FIM-7920E in slot 1 to 40GE QSFP+ connect to the CLI of your FortiGate-7000E system using the management IP and enter the following command:

```
config system global
    set qsfp28-40g-port 1-C1
end
```

The FortiGate-7000E system reboots and when it starts up interface C1 of the FIM-7920E in slot 1 is operating as a 40GE QSFP+ interface .

To change the interface type of the C3 and C4 ports of the FIM-7920E in slot 2 to 40GE QSFP+ enter the following command:

```
config system global
    set qsfp28-40g-port 2-C3 2-C4
end
```

The FortiGate-7000E system reboots and when it starts up interfaces C3 and C4 of the FIM-7920E in slot 2 are operating as a 40GE QSFP+ interfaces.

Splitting the C1 to C4 interfaces

Each 40GE interface (C1 to C4) on the FIM-7920Es in slot 1 and slot 2 of a FortiGate-7000E system can be split into 4 x 10GBE interfaces. You split these interfaces after the FIM-7920Es are installed in your FortiGate-7000E system and the system is up and running. You can split the interfaces of the FIM-7920Es in slot 1 and slot 2 at the same time by entering a single CLI command. Enabling, disabling, or changing the split interfaces configuration requires a system reboot. Fortinet recommends that you split multiple interfaces at the same time according to your requirements to avoid traffic disruption.

For example, to split the C1 interface of the FIM-7920E in slot 1 (this interface is named 1-C1) and the C1 and C4 interfaces of the FIM-7920E in slot 2 (these interfaces are named 2-C1 and 2-C4) connect to the CLI of your FortiGate-7000E system using the management IP and enter the following command:

```
config system global
    set split-port 1-C1 2-C1 2-C4
end
```

After you enter the command, the FortiGate-7000E reboots and when it comes up:

- The 1-C1 interface will no longer be available. Instead the 1-C1/1, 1-C1/2, 1-C1/3, and 1-C1/4 interfaces will be available.
- The 2-C1 interface will no longer be available. Instead the 2-C1/1, 2-C1/2, 2-C1/3, and 2-C1/4 interfaces will be available.

- The 2-C4 interface will no longer be available. Instead the 2-C4/1, 2-C4/2, 2-C4/3, and 2-C4/4 interfaces will be available.

You can now connect breakout cables to these interfaces and configure traffic between them just like any other FortiGate interface.

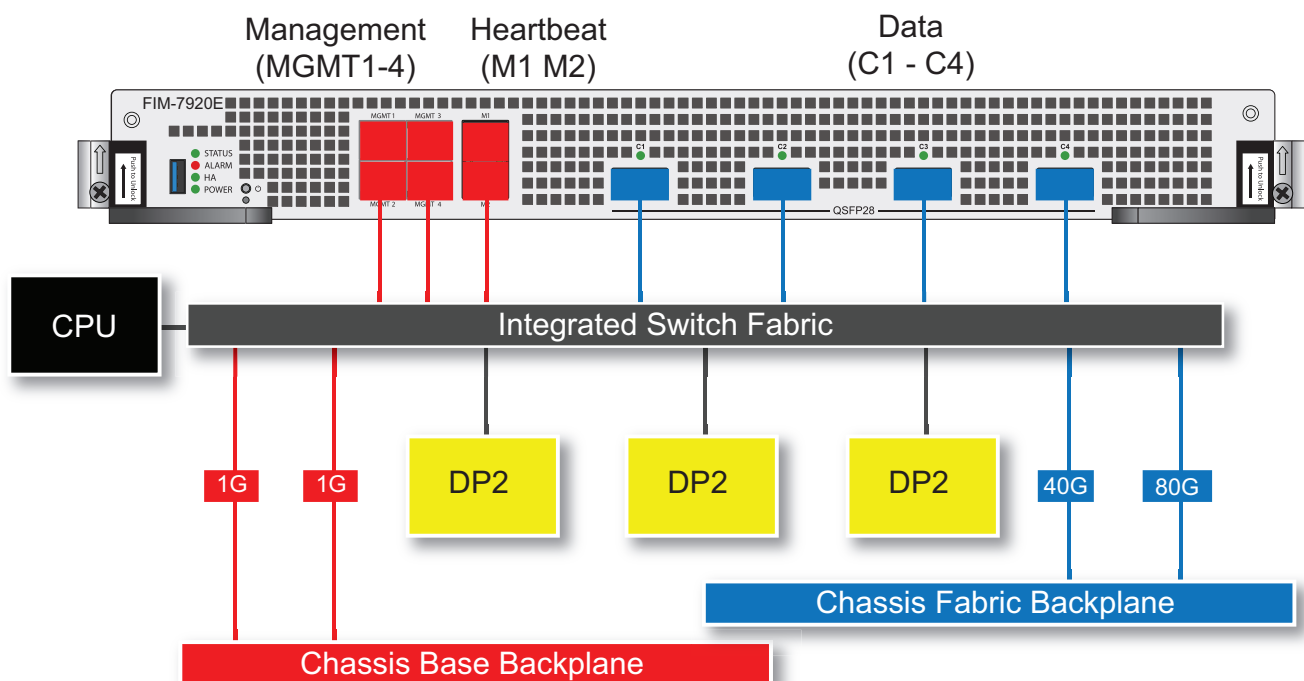
FIM-7920E hardware schematic

The FIM-7920E includes an integrated switch fabric (ISF) that connects the front panel interfaces to the DP2 session-aware load balancers and to the chassis backplanes. The ISF also allows the DP2 processors to distribute sessions among all NP6 processors on the FPM modules in the same chassis.

The FIM-7920E also includes the following backplane communication channels:

- One 80Gbps fabric backplane channel to distribute traffic to the FPMs.
- One 1Gbps base backplane channel for base backplane communication with the FPMs.
- One 40Gbps fabric backplane channel for fabric backplane communication with the other FIM.
- One 1Gbps base backplane channel for base backplane communication with the other FIM.

FIM-7920E hardware architecture



FPM-7620E processing module

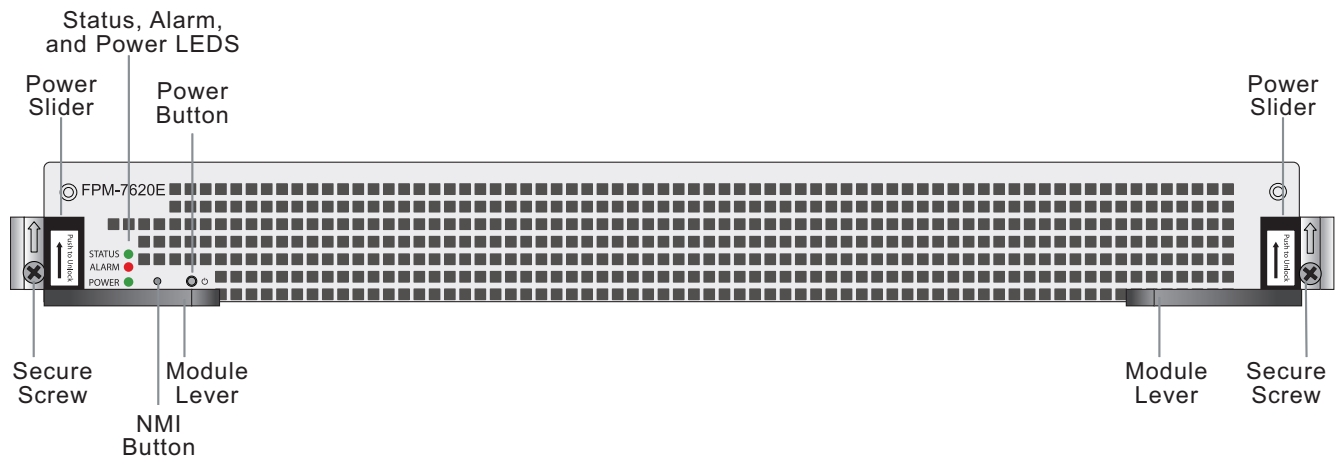
The FPM-7620E processing module is a high-performance worker module that processes sessions load balanced to it by FortiGate-7000E series interface (FIM) modules over the chassis fabric backplane. The FPM-7620E can be installed in any FortiGate-7000E series chassis in slots 3 and up.

The FPM-7620E includes two 80Gbps connections to the chassis fabric backplane and two 1Gbps connections to the base backplane. The FPM-7620E processes sessions using a dual CPU configuration, accelerates network traffic processing with four NP6 processors, and accelerates content processing with eight CP9 processors. The NP6 network processors are connected by the FIM switch fabric so all supported traffic types can be fast path accelerated by the NP6 processors.



You can mix FPM-7620Es and FPM-7630Es in the same FortiGate-7000E chassis. In an HA configuration, both chassis in the HA cluster must have the same FPM modules in the same slots.

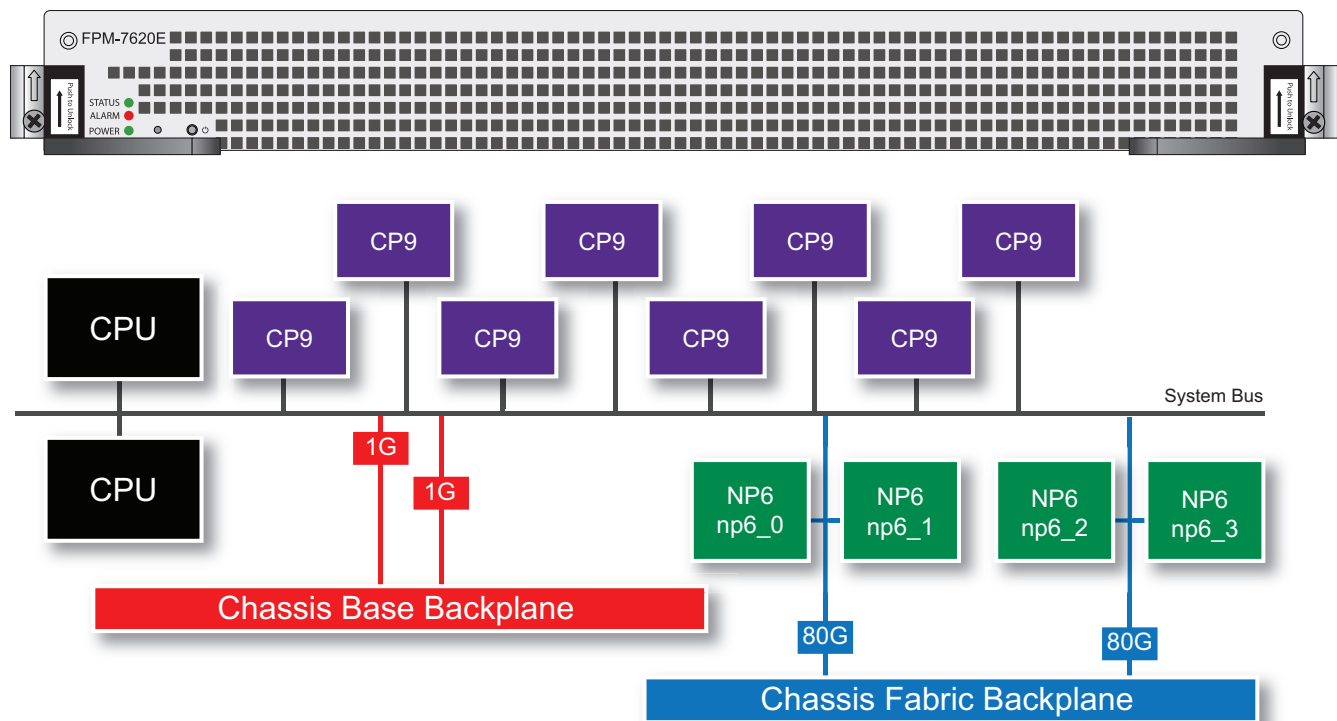
FPM-7620E front panel



FPM-7620E hardware schematic

The four FPM-7620E NP6 network processors, eight CP9 processors, and FIM module integrated switch fabric (ISF) provide hardware acceleration by offloading data traffic from the FPM-7620E CPUs. The result is enhanced network performance provided by the NP6 processors plus the network processing load is removed from the CPU. The NP6 processor can also handle some CPU intensive tasks, like IPsec VPN encryption/decryption. Because of the integrated switch fabric, all sessions are fast-pathed and accelerated.

FPM-7620E hardware architecture



FPM-7630E processing module

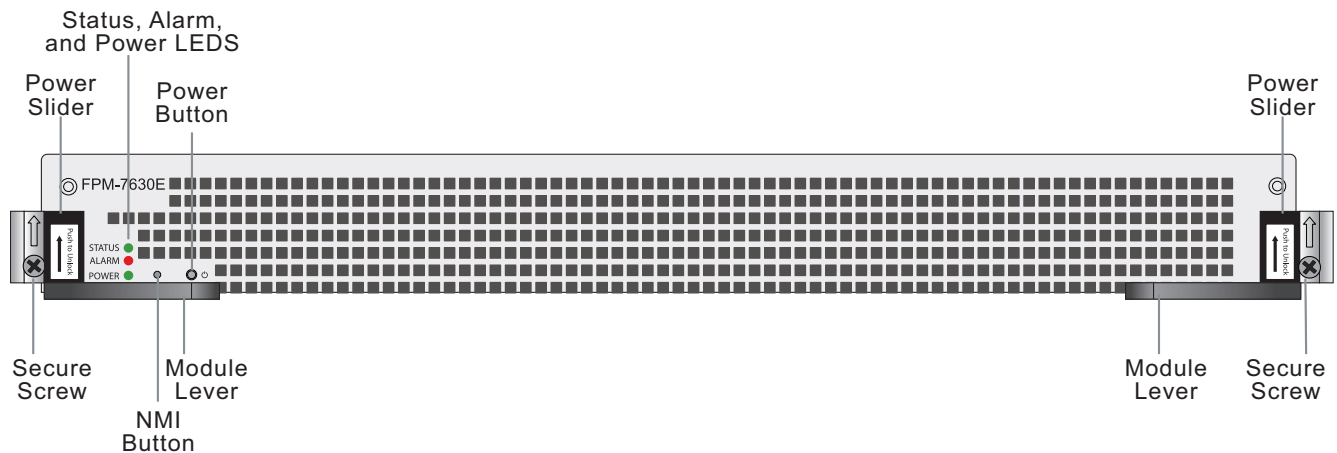
The FPM-7630E processing module is a high-performance worker module that processes sessions load balanced to it by FortiGate-7000E series interface (FIM) modules over the chassis fabric backplane. The FPM-7630E can be installed in any FortiGate-7000E series chassis in slots 3 and up.

The FPM-7630E includes two 80Gbps connections to the chassis fabric backplane and two 1Gbps connections to the base backplane. The FPM-7630E processes sessions using a dual CPU configuration, accelerates network traffic processing with four NP6 processors, and accelerates content processing with eight CP9 processors. The NP6 network processors are connected by the FIM switch fabric so all supported traffic types can be fast path accelerated by the NP6 processors.



The FPM-7630E processor module is an update of the FPM-7620E processor module with the same architecture but a newer CPU configuration. You can mix FPM-7630Es and FPM-7620Es in the same FortiGate-7000E chassis. In an HA configuration, both chassis in the HA cluster must have the same FPM modules in the same slots.

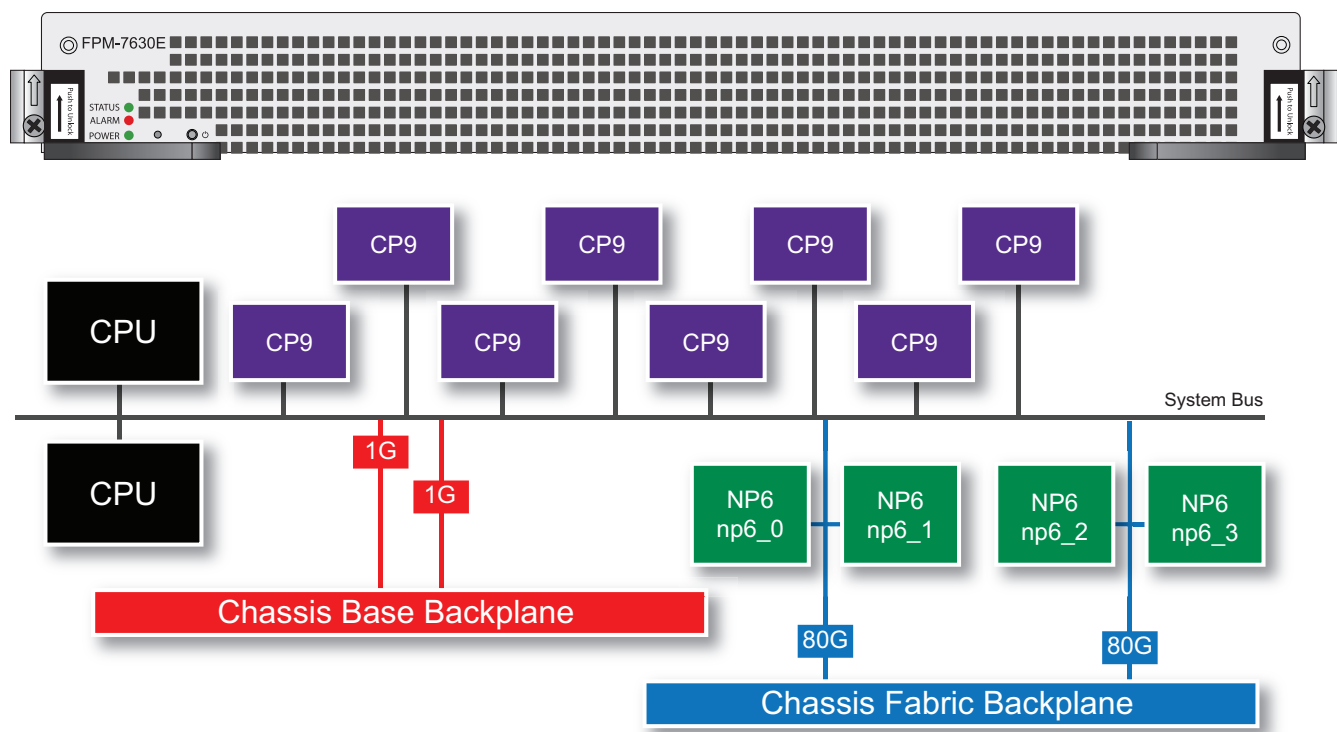
FPM-7630E front panel



FPM-7630E hardware schematic

The four FPM-7630E NP6 network processors, eight CP9 processors, and FIM module integrated switch fabric (ISF) provide hardware acceleration by offloading data traffic from the FPM-7630E CPUs. The result is enhanced network performance provided by the NP6 processors plus the network processing load is removed from the CPU. The NP6 processor can also handle some CPU intensive tasks, like IPsec VPN encryption/decryption. Because of the integrated switch fabric, all sessions are fast-pathed and accelerated.

FPM-7630E hardware architecture



Getting started with FortiGate-7000

Begin by installing your FortiGate-7000 chassis in a rack and installing FIM interface modules and FPM processing modules in it. Then you can power on the chassis and all modules in the chassis will power up.

Whenever a chassis is first powered on, it takes about 5 minutes for all modules to start up and become completely initialized and synchronized. During this time the chassis will not allow traffic to pass through and you may not be able to log into the GUI, or if you manage to log in, the session could time out as the FortiGate-7000 continues starting up.

Review the PSU, fan tray, System Management Module (SMM), FIM, and FPM LEDs to verify that everything is operating normally. Wait until the chassis has completely started up and synchronized before making configuration changes.

When the system has initialized, you have a few options for connecting to the FortiGate-7000 GUI or CLI:

- Log in to the GUI by connecting the MGMT1 interface of the FIM in slot 1 to your network. Then browse to <https://192.168.1.99>.
- Log in to the CLI by connecting the MGMT1 interface of the FIM in slot 1 to your network. Then use an SSH client to connect to 192.168.1.99 and use the same admin account to log in.
- Log in to the primary FIM CLI by connecting to the RJ-45 RS-232 Console 1 serial port on the System Management Module (SMM) with settings: BPS: 9600, data bits: 8, parity: none, stop bits: 1, flow control: none.

The FortiGate-7000 ships with the following factory default configuration.

Option	Default Configuration
Administrator Account User Name	admin
Password	(none) For security reasons you should add a password to the admin account before connecting the FortiGate-7000 to your network. From the GUI, access the Global GUI and go to System > Administrators , edit the admin account, and select Change Password . From the CLI: <pre>config global config system admin edit admin set password <new-password> end</pre>
FIM in slot 1	MGMT1: FIM01, 1-mgmt1, default IP address 192.168.1.99/24 (the MGMT1 interface is part of the mgmt redundant interface that also includes MGMT2, MGMT3, and MGMT4).
FIM in slot 2	MGMT2: FIM02, 2-mgmt1, default IP address 192.168.2.99/24 (the MGMT1 interface is part of the mgmt redundant interface that also includes MGMT2, MGMT3, and MGMT4).
If you choose to only install one FIM, it should be installed in slot 1.	MGMT1: FIM01, 1-mgmt1, default IP address 192.168.1.99/24

All configuration changes must be made from the primary FIM GUI or CLI and not from the secondary FIM or the FPMs.

All other management communication (for example, SNMP queries, remote logging, and so on) use the management aggregate interface and are handled by the primary FIM.

Multi VDOM mode

By default, when you first start up a FortiGate-7000 it is operating in Multi VDOM mode. The default Multi VDOM configuration includes the **root** VDOM and a management VDOM named **mgmt-vdom**. The management interface (mgmt) and the HA heartbeat interfaces (M1, M2) are in mgmt-vdom and all the data interfaces are in the root VDOM.

You cannot delete or rename mgmt-vdom. You also cannot remove interfaces from it or add interfaces to it. You can; however, configure other settings such as routing required for management communication, interface IP addresses, and so on. You can also add VLANs to the interfaces in mgmt-vdom.

You can use the root VDOM for data traffic and you can also add more VDOMs as required, depending on your Multi VDOM license.

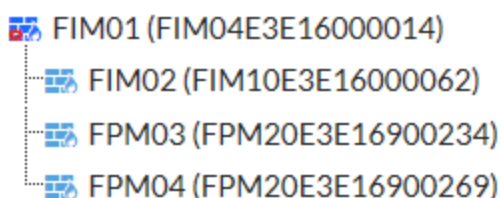
Confirming startup status

Before verifying normal operation and making configuration changes and so on you should wait until the FortiGate-6000 is completely started up and synchronized. This can take a few minutes.

To confirm that the FortiGate-7000E is synchronized, view the **Security Fabric** dashboard widget. If the system is synchronized, all of the FIMs and FPMs should be visible and FortiGate telemetry status should be Connected. The widget also indicates if any FPMs are not synchronized. You can also view the **Sensor Information** widget to confirm that the system temperatures are normal and that all power supplies and fans are operating normally.

Example FortiGate-7000E Security Fabric widget showing normal operation

Security Fabric: FG74E



The FortiGate-7000 uses the Fortinet Security Fabric for communication and synchronization between the FIMs and the FPMs and for normal GUI operation. By default, the Security Fabric is enabled and must remain enabled for normal operation.

From the CLI you can use the `diagnose sys confsync status | grep in_sy` command to view the synchronization status of the FIMs and FPMs. If all of the FIMs and FPMs are synchronized, each output line should include `in_sync=1`. If a line ends with `in_sync=0`, that FIM or FPM is not synchronized. The following example just shows a few output lines:

```
diagnose sys confsync status | grep in_sy
FIM10E3E16000062, Slave, uptime=53740.68, priority=2, slot_id=2:2, idx=3, flag=0x10, in_sync=1
FIM04E3E16000010, Slave, uptime=53790.94, priority=3, slot_id=1:1, idx=0, flag=0x10, in_sync=1
FIM04E3E16000014, Master, uptime=53781.29, priority=1, slot_id=2:1, idx=1, flag=0x10, in_sync=1
FIM10E3E16000040, Slave, uptime=53707.36, priority=4, slot_id=1:2, idx=2, flag=0x10, in_sync=1
FPM20E3E16900234, Slave, uptime=53790.98, priority=16, slot_id=2:3, idx=4, flag=0x64, in_sync=1
FPM20E3E16900269, Slave, uptime=53783.67, priority=17, slot_id=2:4, idx=5, flag=0x64, in_sync=1
FPM20E3E17900113, Slave, uptime=53783.78, priority=116, slot_id=1:3, idx=6, flag=0x64, in_sync=1
FPM20E3E17900217, Slave, uptime=53784.11, priority=117, slot_id=1:4, idx=7, flag=0x64, in_sync=1
...
```

Configuration synchronization

When you log into the FortiGate-7000 GUI or CLI by connecting to the IP address of the aggregate management interface, or through a console connection, you are logging into the FIM in slot 1 (the address of slot 1 is FIM01). The FIM in slot 1 is the FortiGate-7000 config-sync primary (or master). All configuration changes must be made from the GUI or CLI of the FIM in slot 1. The FIM in slot 1 synchronizes configuration changes to the other modules and makes sure module configurations remain synchronized with the FIM in slot 1.

If the FIM in slot 1 fails or reboots, the FIM in slot 2 becomes the config-sync primary.

For the FortiGate-7000 to operate normally, the configurations of the FIMs and FPMs must be synchronized. You can use the information in the following sections to make sure that these configurations are synchronized.

The example output includes four sets of checksums: a checksum for the global configuration, a checksum for each VDOM (in this case there are two VDOMs: root and mgmt-vdom), and a checksum for the complete configuration (all). You can verify that this FPM is synchronized because both sets of HA checksums match and both sets of confsync checksums match. Also as expected, the HA and confsync checksums are different.

If the FIMs and FPMs in a standalone FortiGate-7000 have the same set of checksums, the FIMs and FPMs in that FortiGate-7000 are synchronized.

If a FIM or FPM is out of sync, you can use the output of the `diagnose sys configsync status` command to determine what part of the configuration is out of sync. You could then take action to attempt to correct the problem or contact Fortinet Technical Support at <https://support.fortinet.com> for assistance.

A corrective action could be to restart of the component with the synchronization error. You could also try using the following command to re-calculate the checksums in case the sync error is just temporary:

```
diagnose sys confsync csum-recalculate
```

Confirming that the FortiGate-7000 is synchronized

In addition to viewing configuration synchronization status from the Security Fabric dashboard widget, you can use the following command to confirm that the configurations of the FIMs and FPMs are synchronized:

```
diagnose sys confsync status
```

The command shows the HA and configuration synchronization (confsync) status of the FIMs and FPMs. For each FIM and FPM, `in_sync=1` means the component is synchronized and can operate normally. If any component is out of sync, the command output will include `in_sync=0`. All components must be synchronized for the FortiGate-7000 to operate normally.



To confirm the configuration synchronization status of an HA cluster, see [Confirming that the FortiGate-7000 HA cluster is synchronized on page 97](#).

FIM confsync status

The `diagnose sys confsync status` command output begins with the confsync status for each FPM. In the following example for a FortiGate-7040E, the output begins with the confsync status if the FPM in slot 3. The two lines that begin with serial numbers and end with `in_sync=1` indicate that the FPM (serial number FPM20E3E17900511) is synchronized with the primary FIM (serial number FIM01E3E17000165) and the primary FIM is synchronized with the FPM.

```
diagnose sys confsync status
...
Slot: 3  Module SN: FPM20E3E17900511
ELBC: svcgrp_id=1, chassis=1, slot_id=3
ELBC HB devs:
    elbc-ctrl/1: active=1, hb_count=70932
    elbc-ctrl/2: active=1, hb_count=70936
ELBC mgmt devs:
    elbc-b-chassis: mgmtip_set=1

zone: self_idx:2, master_idx:0, ha_master_idx:255, members:3
FPM20E3E17900511, Slave, uptime=70940.69, priority=19, slot_id=1:3, idx=2, flag=0x4, in_
sync=0
FIM01E3E17000165, Master, uptime=70947.53, priority=1, slot_id=1:1, idx=0, flag=0x10, in_
sync=1
    elbc-b-chassis: state=3(connected), ip=169.254.2.15, last_hb_time=71158.62, hb_nr=338046
FIM04E3E16000102, Slave, uptime=70948.25, priority=2, slot_id=1:2, idx=1, flag=0x10, in_
sync=0
    elbc-b-chassis: state=3(connected), ip=169.254.2.16, last_hb_time=71158.62, hb_nr=338131
```

Primary FIM confsync status

The `diagnose sys confsync status` command output ends with the confsync status of the primary FIM, which shows the configuration status between the primary FIM and the other FIM and FPMs:

```
Current slot: 1  Module SN: FIM01E3E17000165
ELBC: svcgrp_id=1, chassis=1, slot_id=1

ha zone: ha_master_sn:FIM01E3E17000165, ha_master_idx:1
Ha Member: FG74E43E17000073, mode=a-p, role=Master, slot_id=1:1, idx=1, in_sync=1
Ha Member: FG74E43E17000065, mode=a-p, role=Slave, slot_id=2:1, idx=0, in_sync=0

zone: self_idx:1, master_idx:1, ha_master_idx:1, members:4 ha_member:1
```

```

FIM01E3E17000165, Master, uptime=70947.53, priority=1, slot_id=1:1, idx=1, flag=0x10, in_
sync=1
FIM04E3E16000102, Slave, uptime=70948.25, priority=2, slot_id=1:2, idx=2, flag=0x10, in_
sync=0
    elbc-b-chassis: state=3(connected), ip=169.254.2.16, last_hb_time=71057.67, hb_nr=338183
FPM20E3E17900506, Slave, uptime=70940.78, priority=20, slot_id=1:4, idx=3, flag=0x64, in_
sync=0
    elbc-b-chassis: state=3(connected), ip=169.254.2.4, last_hb_time=71057.78, hb_nr=338387
FPM20E3E17900511, Slave, uptime=70940.69, priority=19, slot_id=1:3, idx=4, flag=0x64, in_
sync=0
    elbc-b-chassis: state=3(connected), ip=169.254.2.3, last_hb_time=71057.62, hb_nr=338456

```

Viewing more details about FortiGate-7000 synchronization

If the output of the `diagnose sys configsync status` command includes `in_sync=0` entries, you can use the `diagnose sys confsync showcsum` command to view more details about the configuration checksums and potentially identify parts of the configuration that are not synchronized.

The `diagnose sys configsync showcsum` command shows HA and confsync debugzone and checksum information for the FIMs and FPMs, beginning with the FPM in slot 3 and ending with the primary FIM.

The following example shows the FPM in slot 3.

```

=====
Slot: 3  Module SN: FPM20E3E17900511
ha debugzone
global: 7e 06 79 02 65 a9 ea e3 68 58 73 c2 33 d0 16 f1
root: 43 2c ee 2c f1 b3 b2 13 ff 37 34 5e 86 11 dc bf
mgmt-vdom: 9c 7d 58 9f 81 4b b7 4e ed 2a c3 02 34 b4 7c 63
all: 0b 16 f2 e4 e2 89 eb a1 bf 8f 15 9b e1 4e 3b f2

ha checksum
global: 7e 06 79 02 65 a9 ea e3 68 58 73 c2 33 d0 16 f1
root: 43 2c ee 2c f1 b3 b2 13 ff 37 34 5e 86 11 dc bf
mgmt-vdom: 9c 7d 58 9f 81 4b b7 4e ed 2a c3 02 34 b4 7c 63
all: 0b 16 f2 e4 e2 89 eb a1 bf 8f 15 9b e1 4e 3b f2

confsync debugzone
global: 09 28 1a fd 1b 4c 7d 39 1b 67 8a 62 e0 04 f8 b3
root: 8c 54 95 74 40 68 2c a7 3e ef e6 26 d3 37 09 08
mgmt-vdom: 88 34 5f b0 7c 36 a6 32 50 fb 9c 1f 36 84 86 6c
all: f4 aa fe e5 e3 0b c9 9e 56 b5 05 30 f4 27 80 3f

confsync checksum
global: 09 28 1a fd 1b 4c 7d 39 1b 67 8a 62 e0 04 f8 b3
root: 8c 54 95 74 40 68 2c a7 3e ef e6 26 d3 37 09 08
mgmt-vdom: 88 34 5f b0 7c 36 a6 32 50 fb 9c 1f 36 84 86 6c
all: f4 aa fe e5 e3 0b c9 9e 56 b5 05 30 f4 27 80 3f

```

The example output includes four sets of checksums: a checksum for the global configuration, a checksum for each VDOM (in this case there are two VDOMs: root and mgmt-vdom), and a checksum for the complete configuration (all). You can verify that this FPM is synchronized because both sets of HA checksums match and both sets of confsync checksums match. Also as expected, the HA and confsync checksums are different.

If the FIMs and FPMs in a standalone FortiGate-7000 have the same set of checksums, the FIMs and FPMs in that FortiGate-7000 are synchronized.

If a FIM or FPM is out of sync, you can use the output of the `diagnose sys configsync status` command to determine what part of the configuration is out of sync. You could then take action to attempt to correct the problem or contact Fortinet Technical Support at <https://support.fortinet.com> for assistance.

A corrective action could be to restart of the component with the synchronization error. You could also try using the following command to re-calculate the checksums in case the sync error is just temporary:

```
diagnose sys confsync csum-recalculate
```

FortiGate-7000 dashboard widgets

The FortiGate-7000 includes a number of custom dashboard widgets that provide extra or custom information for FortiGate-7000 systems.

Security Fabric

The **Security Fabric** widget shows the FIMs and FPMs in your FortiGate-7000 system. The primary (or master) FIM is highlighted with a star icon. You can hover over the components in the Security Fabric widget to see each component's host name, serial number, model, firmware version, the system management IP address, and the special HTTPS management port number. The Security Fabric widget also indicates if the modules are synchronized and communicating with the primary (master) FIM.

You can also click on any FIM or FPM and select an option to view the it on a Security Fabric topology or log into it using the management IP address and special HTTPS management port number.

Interface Bandwidth

You can create multiple **Interface Bandwidth** widgets to show traffic that is transmitted and received by any FortiGate-7000 interface. You can create **Interface Bandwidth** widgets for:

- Any physical interface
- Any link aggregation (LAG) interface
- Any redundant interface
- Any individual member of a LAG or a redundant interface
- Any VLAN interface
- Any IPsec VPN tunnel interface

Interface bandwidth widgets display all of the traffic processed by the interface, independently of how the traffic is load balanced.

You can create individual Interface Bandwidth widgets for each interface that you want to monitor. After you create a widget, you can choose to display traffic for the last hour, 24 hours, or week, updated in real time.

To display similar information from the CLI for physical interfaces, use the following command:

```
diagnose hardware deviceinfo nic <interface-name>
```

To display similar information from the CLI for LAG and VLAN interfaces, use the following command:

```
diagnose netlink interface list <interface-name>
```

Resource Usage

You can create multiple **Resource Usage** widgets to show CPU use, log rate, memory use, session creation rate, and the number of active sessions. You can create separate widgets for management traffic and data traffic. After you have created a widget, you can choose to display data for the last 1 minute to 24 hours, updated in real time.

Sensor Information

The **Sensor Information** widget displays FortiGate-7000 temperature, power supply (PSU), and fan speed information. You can click on any item on the widget to display data collected by individual sensors.

Setting up management connections

When your FortiGate-7060E first starts up, the MGMT1 to MGMT4 interfaces of both of the FIMs are part of a static 802.3 aggregate interface with a default IP address of 192.168.1.99. On the GUI or CLI the 802.3 aggregate interface is named **mgmt**.

Example mgmt interface configuration

Interface Name	mgmt
Alias	<input type="text"/>
Link Status	Up
Type	802.3ad Aggregate
Virtual Domain	mgmt-vdom
Interface Members	<div> <div>1-mgmt1 ✕</div> <div>1-mgmt2 ✕</div> <div>1-mgmt3 ✕</div> <div>1-mgmt4 ✕</div> <div>2-mgmt1 ✕</div> <div>2-mgmt2 ✕</div> <div>2-mgmt3 ✕</div> <div>2-mgmt4 ✕</div> <div>+</div> </div>
Role	LAN

You can configure and manage your FortiGate-7060E by connecting an Ethernet cable to any of the MGMT1 - 4 interfaces of the FIM in slot 1 or slot 2 and logging into the GUI using HTTPS or the CLI using SSH. The default IP address is 192.168.1.99 and you can log in with the **admin** administrator account with no password.



For security reasons you should add a password to the admin account before connecting the chassis to your network.

Adding a password to the admin administrator account

For security purposes one of the first things you should do is add a password to the admin account.

Depending on your firmware version, when you first log into the GUI you maybe presented with an option to change the admin account password.

From the GUI, access the Global GUI and go to **System > Administrators**, edit the **admin** account, and select **Change Password**.

From the CLI:

```
config global
  config system admin
    edit admin
      set password <new-password>
    end
```

Using data interfaces for management traffic

You can set up in-band management connections to all FortiGate-7000 data interfaces by setting up administrative access for the data interface that you want to use to manage the FortiGate-7000. Connecting to a data interface for management is the same as connecting to one of the management interfaces. For example, you can log in to the GUI or CLI of the FortiGate-7000 primary FIM.

Administrators with VDOM-level access can log into to their VDOM if they connect to a data interface that is in their VDOM.

In-band management limitations

In-band management has the following limitations:

- In-band management does not support using special port numbers to connect to individual FIMs or FPMs. If you have logged in using an in-band management connection, the special management HTTPS port numbers appear on the Security Fabric dashboard widget when you hover over individual FIMs or FPMs. You can click on an FIM or FPM in the Security Fabric dashboard widget and select **Login to...** to log into the GUI of that FIM or FPM. This action creates an out-of-band management connection by crafting a URL that includes the IP address of the mgmt interface, plus the special HTTPS port number required to connect to that FIM or FPM.
- The data interfaces must have IPv4 IP addresses, IPv6 in-band management is not supported.
- In-band management connections to the IP address of a VDOM link interface is not supported.
- Large (or jumbo) packets from in-band management sessions are fragmented by the FPMs before they are forwarded to the primary (master) FIM.
- SNMP in-band management is not supported.
- VRF routes are not applied to outgoing in-band management traffic.
- Changes made on the fly to administrative access settings are not enforced for in-progress in-band management sessions. The changes apply to new in-band sessions only. For example, if an administrator is using SSH for an in-band management connection and you change the SSH administrative port, that in-band management session can continue. Any out-of-band management sessions would need to be restarted with the new port number. New in-band SSH management sessions need to use the new port number. HTTPS access works the same way; however,

HTTPS starts new sessions every time you navigate to a new GUI page. So an on the fly change would affect an HTTPS in-band management session whenever the administrator navigates to a new GUI page.

- In-band management is not supported for connections to data interfaces that are in a transparent mode VDOM.

Setting the MTU for a data interface

You can use the following command to change the MTU for a FortiGate-7000 data interface:

```
config system interface
  edit 1B5/1
    set mtu-override enable
    set mtu <value>
  end
```

For the FortiGate-7000 the default <value> is 1500 and the range is 256 to 9198.

More management connections than expected for one device

The FortiGate-7000 may show more management-related network activity than most FortiGate devices. This occurs because many management functions are handled independently by each FIM and FPM.

For example, when a FortiGate-7000 first starts up, the FIMs and FPMs perform their DNS lookups. Resulting in more DNS-related traffic during startup than expected for a single device. Once the system is processing data traffic, the amount of management traffic would be proportional to the amount of traffic the system is processing.

More ARP queries than expected for one device - potential issue on large WiFi networks

The FortiGate-7000 sends more ARP queries than expected because each FPM builds its own ARP table to be able to communicate with devices in the same broadcast domain or layer 2 network. This behavior does not cause a problem with most layer 2 networks. However, because the ARP traffic for all of the FPMs comes from the same mac and IP address, on networks with broadcast filtering or ARP suppression, some of the FortiGate-7000 ARP queries and replies may be suppressed. If this happens, FPMs may not be able to build complete ARP tables. An FPM with an incomplete ARP table will not be able to forward sessions to some destinations that it should be able to reach, resulting in dropped sessions.

Broadcast filtering or ARP suppression is commonly used on large WiFi networks to control the amount of ARP traffic on the WiFi network. Dropped FortiGate-7000 sessions have been seen when a FortiGate-7000 is connected to the same broadcast domain as a large WiFi network with ARP suppression.

To resolve this dropped session issue, you can remove broadcast filtering or ARP suppression from the network. If this is not an option, Fortinet recommends that you install a layer 3 device to separate the FortiGate-7000 from the WiFi network broadcast domain. ARP traffic is reduced because the FPMs no longer need to add the addresses of all of the WiFi devices to their ARP tables since they are on a different broadcast domain. The FPMs just need to add the address of the layer 3 device.

Replacing a failed FPM or FIM

This section describes how to remove a failed FPM or FIM and replace it with a new one. The procedure is slightly different depending on if you are operating in HA mode with two FortiGate-7000s or just operating a standalone FortiGate-7000.

Replacing a failed module in a standalone FortiGate-7000

1. Power down the failed module by pressing the front panel power button.
2. Remove the module from the chassis.
3. Insert the replacement module. It should power up when inserted into the chassis if the chassis has power.
4. The module's configuration is synchronized and its firmware is upgraded to match the firmware version on the primary FIM. The new module reboots.
5. Confirm that the new module is running the correct firmware version either from the GUI or by using the `get system status` command.

Manually update the module to the correct version if required. You can do this by logging into the module and performing a firmware upgrade. See [Firmware upgrades on page 61](#).

6. Use the `diagnose sys confsync status | grep in_sy` command to confirm that the configuration has been synchronized. The field `in_sync=1` indicates that the configurations of the modules are synchronized.

If `in_sync` is not equal to 1, or if a module is missing in the command output you can try restarting the modules in the chassis by entering `execute reboot` from any module CLI. If this does not solve the problem, contact [Fortinet Support](#).

Replacing a failed module in a FortiGate-7000 chassis in an HA cluster

1. Power down the failed module by pressing the front panel power button.
2. Remove the module from the chassis.
3. Insert the replacement module. It should power up when inserted into the chassis if the chassis has power.
4. The module's configuration is synchronized and its firmware is upgraded to match the configuration and firmware version on the primary module. The new module reboots.
5. Confirm that the module is running the correct firmware version.
Manually update the module to the correct version if required. You can do this by logging into the module and performing a firmware upgrade.

6. Configure the new module for HA operation. For example:

```
config system ha
  set mode a-p
  set chassis-id 1
  set hbdev m1 m2
  set hbdev-vlan-id 999
  set hbdev-second-vlan-id 990
end
```

7. Optionally configure the hostname:

```
config system global
  set hostname <name>
end
```

The HA configuration and the hostname must be set manually because HA settings and the hostname is not synchronized.

8. Use the `diagnose sys confsync status | grep in_sy` command to confirm that the configuration has been synchronized. The field `in_sync=1` indicates that the configurations of the modules are synchronized.

If `in_sync` is not equal to 1, or if a module is missing in the command output you can try restarting the modules in the chassis by entering `execute reboot` from any module CLI. If this does not solve the problem, contact Fortinet support at <https://support.fortinet.com>.

Resolving FIM or FPM boot device I/O errors

If an FIM or FPM has boot device I/O errors, messages similar to the following appear during console sessions with the module:

```
EXT2-fs (sda1): previous I/O error to superblock detected
EXT2-fs (sda3): previous I/O error to superblock detected
```

If you see boot device I/O errors similar to these, you should contact Fortinet Support (<https://support.fortinet.com>) for assistance with finding the underlying cause of these errors.

Once the underlying cause is determined and resolved, you use BIOS commands to reformat and restore the affected boot device as described in the following sections.

Formatting an FIM boot device and installing new firmware

You can use the following steps to format an FIM boot device and install new firmware from a TFTP server.

1. Set up a TFTP server and copy the firmware file to the TFTP server default folder.
2. Set up your network to allow traffic between the TFTP server and one of the FIM MGMT interfaces.
3. Using the console cable supplied with your FortiGate-7000, connect the SMM Console 1 port on the FortiGate-7000 to the USB port on your management computer.
4. Start a terminal emulation program on the management computer. Use these settings:
Baud Rate (bps) 9600, Data bits 8, Parity None, Stop bits 1, and Flow Control None.
5. Press Ctrl-T to enter console switch mode.
6. Repeat pressing Ctrl-T until you have connected to the FIM to be updated. Example prompt for the FIM in slot 2:
<Switching to Console: FIM02 (9600)>
7. Optionally log in to the FIM's CLI.
8. Reboot the FIM.
You can do this using the `execute reboot` command from the CLI or by pressing the power switch on the FIM front panel.
9. When the FIM starts up, follow the boot process in the terminal session, and press any key when prompted to interrupt the boot process.
10. To format the FIM boot disk, press F.
11. Press Y to confirm that you want to erase all data on the boot disk and format it.
When the formatting is complete the FIM restarts.
12. Follow the boot process in the terminal session, and press any key when prompted to interrupt the boot process.
13. To set up the TFTP configuration, press C.

14. Use the BIOS menu to set the following. Change settings only if required.

[P]: Set image download port: MGMT1 (the connected MGMT interface.)

[D]: Set DHCP mode: Disabled

[I]: Set local IP address: The IP address of the MGMT interface that you want to use to connect to the TFTP server. This address must not be the same as the FortiGate-7000 management IP address and cannot conflict with other addresses on your network.

[S]: Set local Subnet Mask: Set as required for your network.

[G]: Set local gateway: Set as required for your network.

[V]: Local VLAN ID: Should be set to <none>. (use -1 to set the Local VLAN ID to <none>.)

[T]: Set remote TFTP server IP address: The IP address of the TFTP server.

[F]: Set firmware image file name: The name of the firmware image file that you want to install.

15. To quit this menu, press Q.

16. To review the configuration, press R.

To make corrections, press C and make the changes as required. When the configuration is correct, proceed to the next step.

17. To start the TFTP transfer, press T.

The firmware image is uploaded from the TFTP server and installed on the FIM. The FIM then restarts with its configuration reset to factory defaults. After restarting, the FIM configuration is synchronized to match the configuration of the primary FIM. The FIM restarts again and can start processing traffic.

18. Once the FIM restarts, verify that the correct firmware is installed.

You can do this from the FIM GUI dashboard or from the FPM CLI using the `get system status` command.

19. Enter the `diagnose sys confsync status | grep in_sy` command to verify that the configuration has been synchronized. The field `in_sync=1` indicates that the configurations of the FIMs and FPMs are synchronized.

FIMs and FPMs that are missing or that show `in_sync=0` are not synchronized. To synchronize an FIM or FPM that is not synchronized, log into the CLI of the FIM or FPM and restart it using the `execute reboot` command. If this does not solve the problem, contact Fortinet Support at <https://support.fortinet.com>.

If you enter the `diagnose sys confsync status | grep in_sy` command before the FIM has restarted, it will not appear in the command output. As well, the Configuration Sync Monitor will temporarily show that it is not synchronized.

Formatting an FPM boot device and installing new firmware

You can use the following steps to format an FPM boot device and install new firmware from a TFTP server.

1. Set up a TFTP server and copy the firmware file into the TFTP server default folder.

2. Log into to the primary FIM CLI and enter the following command:

```
diagnose load-balance switch set-compatible <slot> enable bios
```

Where <slot> is the number of the FortiGate-7000 slot containing the FPM to be upgraded.

3. Set up your network to allow traffic between the TFTP server and a MGMT interface of one of the FIMs.

You can use any MGMT interface of either of the FIMs. When you set up the FPM TFTP settings below, you select the FIM that can connect to the TFTP server. If the MGMT interface you are using is one of the MGMT interfaces connected as a LAG to a switch, you must shutdown or disconnect all of the other interfaces that are part of the LAG from the switch. This includes MGMT interfaces from both FIMs

4. Using the console cable supplied with your FortiGate-7000, connect the SMM Console 1 port on the FortiGate-7000 to the USB port on your management computer.

5. Start a terminal emulation program on the management computer. Use these settings:
Baud Rate (bps) 9600, Data bits 8, Parity None, Stop bits 1, and Flow Control None.
6. Press Ctrl-T to enter console switch mode.
7. Repeat pressing Ctrl-T until you have connected to the module to be updated. Example prompt:
<Switching to Console: FPM03 (9600)>
8. Optionally log into the FPM's CLI.
9. Reboot the FPM.
You can do this using the `execute reboot` command from the FPM's CLI or by pressing the power switch on the FPM front panel.
10. When the FPM starts up, follow the boot process in the terminal session and press any key when prompted to interrupt the boot process.
11. To format the FPM boot disk, press F.
12. Press Y to confirm that you want to erase all data on the boot disk and format it.
When the formatting is complete the FPM restarts.
13. Follow the boot process in the terminal session, and press any key when prompted to interrupt the boot process.
14. To set up the TFTP configuration, press C.
15. Use the BIOS menu to set the following. Change settings only if required.
[P]: Set image download port: FIM01 (the FIM that can communicate with the TFTP server).
[D]: Set DHCP mode: Disabled.
[I]: Set local IP address: The IP address of the MGMT interface of the selected FIM that you want to use to connect to the TFTP server. This address must not be the same as the FortiGate-7000 management IP address and cannot conflict with other addresses on your network.
[S]: Set local Subnet Mask: Set as required for your network.
[G]: Set local gateway: Set as required for your network.
[V]: Local VLAN ID: Should be set to <none>. (use -1 to set the Local VLAN ID to <none>.)
[T]: Set remote TFTP server IP address: The IP address of the TFTP server.
[F]: Set firmware image file name: The name of the firmware image file that you want to install.
16. To quit this menu, press Q.
17. To review the configuration, press R.
To make corrections, press C and make the changes as required. When the configuration is correct proceed to the next step.
18. To start the TFTP transfer, press T.
The firmware image is uploaded from the TFTP server and installed on the FPM. The FPM then restarts with its configuration reset to factory defaults. After restarting, the FPM configuration is synchronized to match the configuration of the primary FPM. The FPM restarts again and can start processing traffic.
19. Once the FPM restarts, verify that the correct firmware is installed.
You can do this from the FPM GUI dashboard or from the FPM CLI using the `get system status` command.
20. Enter the `diagnose sys confsync status | grep in_sy` command to verify that the configuration has been synchronized. The field `in_sync=1` indicates that the configurations of the FIMs and FPMs are synchronized. FIMs and FPMs that are missing or that show `in_sync=0` are not synchronized. To synchronize an FIM or FPM that is not synchronized, log into the CLI of the FIM or FPM and restart it using the `execute reboot` command. If this does not solve the problem, contact Fortinet Support at <https://support.fortinet.com>.
If you enter the `diagnose sys confsync status | grep in_sy` command before the FPM has restarted, it will not appear in the command output. As well, the Configuration Sync Monitor will temporarily show that it is not synchronized.

21. Once the FPM is operating normally, log back in to the primary FIM CLI and enter the following command to reset the FPM to normal operation:

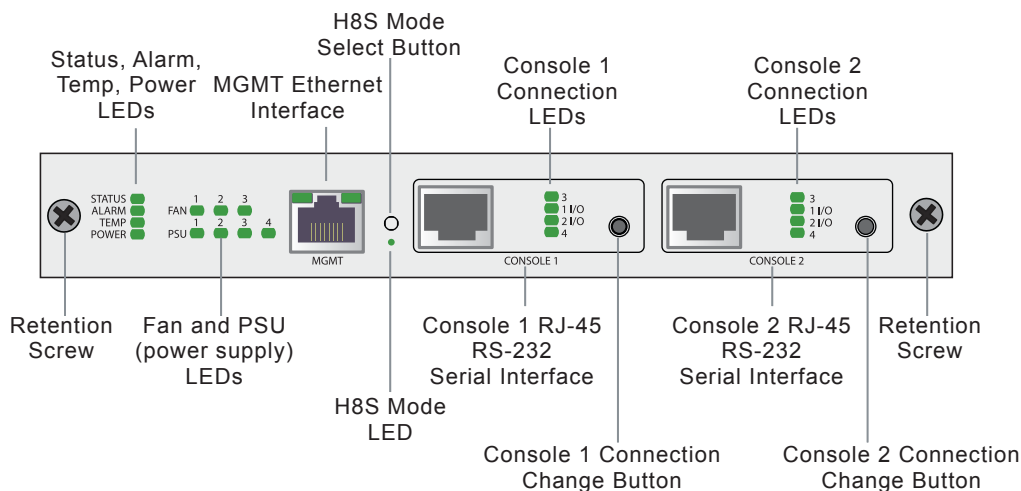
```
diagnose load-balance switch set-compatible <slot> disable
```

Configuration synchronization errors will occur if you do not reset the FPM to normal operation.

Connecting to module CLIs using the System Management Module

All FortiGate-7000 chassis includes a System Management Module (SMM) (also called a shelf manager) on the chassis front panel. See the system guide for your chassis for details about the SMM.

FortiGate-7040E SMM front panel



The SMM includes two console ports named Console 1 and Console 2 that can be used to connect to the CLI of the FIM and FPMs in the chassis. As described in the system guide, the console ports are also used to connect to SMC CLIs of the SMM and the FIMs and FPMs

By default when the chassis first starts up Console 1 is connected to the FortiOS CLI of the FIM in slot 1 and Console 2 is disconnected. The default settings for connecting to each console port are:

Baud Rate (bps) 9600, Data bits 8, Parity None, Stop bits 1, and Flow Control None.

You can use the console connection change buttons to select the CLI that each console port is connected to. Press the button to cycle through the FIM and FPM FortiOS CLIs and disconnect this console. The console's LEDs indicate what it is connected to. If no LED is lit the console is either connected to the SMM SMC SDI console or disconnected. Both console ports cannot be connected to the same CLI at the same time. If a console button press would cause a conflict that module is skipped. If one of the console ports is disconnected then the other console port can connect to any CLI.

If you connect a PC to one of the SMM console ports with a serial cable and open a terminal session you can press **Ctrl-T** to enable console switching mode. Press Ctrl-T multiple times to cycle through the FIM and FPM module FortiOS CLIs (the new destination is displayed in the terminal window). If you press **Ctrl-T** after connecting to the FPM module in slot 6 the console is disconnected. Press Ctrl-T again to start over again at slot 1.

Example: connecting to the FortiOS CLI of the FIM in slot 1

Use the following steps to connect to the FortiOS CLI of the FPM in slot 3:

1. Connect the console cable supplied with your chassis to Console 1 and to your PC or other device RS-232 console port.
2. Start a terminal emulation program on the management computer. Use these settings:
Baud Rate (bps) 9600, Data bits 8, Parity None, Stop bits 1, and Flow Control None.
3. Press **Ctrl-T** to enter console switch mode.
4. Repeat pressing **Ctrl-T** until you have connected to slot 1. Example prompt:
<Switching to Console: FPM03 (9600)>
5. Log in to the CLI.
6. When your session is complete, enter the `exit` command to log out or use Ctrl-T to switch to another module CLI.

Failover in a standalone FortiGate-7000

A FortiGate-7000 will continue to operate even if an FIM or FPM fails or is removed. If an FPM fails, sessions being processed by that FPM fail and must be restarted. All sessions are load balanced to the remaining FPMs.

If an FIM fails, the other FIM will continue to operate and will become the config-sync primary (or master). However, traffic received or sent by the interfaces of failed FIM will be lost.

You can use LACP or redundant interfaces to connect interfaces of both FIMs to the same network. In this way, if one of the FIMs fails, traffic will continue to be received by the other FIM.

Changing data interface network settings

To change the IP address of any FortiGate-7000 data interface:

- From the GUI access the Global GUI and go to **Network > Interfaces**. Edit any interface to change its IP address and other settings.
- From the CLI:

```
config system interface
  edit <interface-name>
    set ip <ip-address> <netmask>
  end
```

Resetting to factory defaults

At any time during the configuration process, if you run into problems, you can reset the FortiGate-7000 to factory defaults and start over. From the primary FIM CLI enter:

```
config global
  execute factoryreset
```

Restarting the FortiGate-7000

To restart all of the modules in a FortiGate-7000, connect to the primary FIM CLI and enter the `execute reboot` command. When you enter this command from the primary FIM, all of the modules restart.

To restart individual FIMs or FPMs, log in to the CLI of the module to restart and run the `execute reboot` command.

Packet sniffing for FIM and FPM packets

From a VDOM, you can use the `diagnose sniffer packet` command to view or sniff packets as they are processed by FIM or FPMs for that VDOM. To use this command you have to be logged into a VDOM. You can run this command from any FIM or FPM CLI.

The command output includes the address of the slot containing the module that processed the packet. From the primary FIM, you can see packets processed by all of the FIMs and FPMs. From individual FIMs or FPMs you can see packets processed by that FIM or FPM.

From the primary FIM, you can enter the `diagnose sniffer options slot current` command to only see packets processed by the primary FIM. You can also enter the `diagnose sniffer options slot default` command to see packets processed by all modules.

The command syntax is:

```
diagnose sniffer packet <interface> <protocol-filter> <verbose> <count> <timestamp> <slot>
```

Where:

`<interface>` is the name of one or more interfaces on which to sniff for packets. Use `any` to sniff packets for all interfaces. To view management traffic use the `elbc-base-ctrl` interface name.

`<protocol-filter>` a filter to select the protocol for which to view traffic. This can be simple, such as entering `udp` to view UDP traffic or complex to specify a protocol, port, and source and destination interface and so on.

`<verbose>` the amount of detail in the output, and can be:

1. display packet headers only.
2. display packet headers and IP data.
3. display packet headers and Ethernet data (if available).
4. display packet headers and interface names.
5. display packet headers, IP data, and interface names.
6. display packet headers, Ethernet data (if available), and interface names.

`<count>` the number of packets to view. You can enter Ctrl-C to stop the sniffer before the count is reached.

`<timestamp>` the timestamp format, `a` for UTC time and `l` for local time.

Sample diagnose sniffer packet output from the primary FIM

```
[FPM04] 1.598890 3ffe:1:1:4::97b.13344 -> 3ffe:1:2:4::105.25: syn 151843506
[FPM03] 1.214394 802.1Q vlan#4022 P0 3ffe:1:1:2::214.10012 -> 3ffe:1:2:2::103.53: udp 30
[FIM02] 2.177930 llc unnumbered, 23, flags [poll], length 40
[FIM01] 1.583778 172.30.248.99.57167 -> 10.160.19.70.443: ack 2403720303
[FPM04] 1.598891 17.3.8.3.14471 -> 18.3.1.107.143: syn 2715027438 ^C
```

```
[FPM03] 1.214395 3ffe:1:1:2::214.10012 -> 3ffe:1:2:2::103.53: udp 30
[FIM01] 1.583779 172.30.248.99.57167 -> 10.160.19.70.443: ack 2403720303
```

Diagnose debug flow trace for FPM and FIM activity

The diagnose debug flow trace output from the FortiGate-7000 primary FIM CLI shows traffic from all FIMs and FPMs. Each line of output begins with the name of the component that produced the output. For example:

```
diagnose debug enable
[FPM04] id=20085 trace_id=6 func=print_pkt_detail line=5777 msg="vd-root:0 received a packet(proto=6,
10.0.2.3:10001->20.0.0.100:80) from HA-LAG0. flag [S], seq 2670272303, ack 0, win 32768"
[FPM03] id=20085 trace_id=7 func=print_pkt_detail line=5777 msg="vd-root:0 received a packet(proto=6,
10.0.2.3:10002->20.0.0.100:80) from HA-LAG0. flag [S], seq 3193740413, ack 0, win 32768"
[FPM04] id=20085 trace_id=6 func=init_ip_session_common line=5937 msg="allocate a new session-
0000074c"
[FPM04] id=20085 trace_id=6 func=vf_ip_route_input_common line=2591 msg="find a route: flag=04000000
gw-20.0.0.100 via HA-LAG1"
[FPM04] id=20085 trace_id=6 func=fw_forward_handler line=755 msg="Allowed by Policy-10000:"
```

Running FortiGate-7000 diagnose debug flow trace commands from an individual FPM CLI shows traffic processed by that FPM only.

```
diagnose debug enable
[FPM03] id=20085 trace_id=7 func=print_pkt_detail line=5777 msg="vd-root:0 received a packet(proto=6,
10.0.2.3:10002->20.0.0.100:80) from HA-LAG0. flag [S], seq 3193740413, ack 0, win 32768"
[FPM03] id=20085 trace_id=7 func=init_ip_session_common line=5937 msg="allocate a new session-
000007b2"
[FPM03] id=20085 trace_id=7 func=vf_ip_route_input_common line=2591 msg="find a route: flag=04000000
gw-20.0.0.100 via HA-LAG1"
[FPM03] id=20085 trace_id=7 func=fw_forward_handler line=755 msg="Allowed by Policy-10000:"
```

Showing how the DP2 processor will load balance a session

You can use the following command to display the FPM slot that the DP2 processor will load balance a session to.

```
diagnose load-balance dp find session {normal | reverse | fragment | pinhole}
```

Normal and reverse sessions

For a normal or corresponding reverse session you can define the following:

```
{normal | reverse} <ip-protocol> <src-ip> {<src-port> | <icmp-type> | <icmp-typecode>} <dst-
ip> {<dst-port> | <icmp-id>} [<x-vid>] [<x-cfi>] [<x-pri>]
```

Fragment packet sessions

For a session for fragment packets you can define the following:

```
fragment <ip-protocol> {<src-port> | <icmp-type> | <icmp-typecode>} <dst-ip> <ip-id> [<x-
vid>] [<x-cfi>] [<x-pri>]
```

Pinhole sessions

For a pinhole sessions you can define the following:

```
pinhole <ip-protocol> <dst-ip> <dst-port> [<x-vid>] [<x-cfi>] [<x-pri>]
```

Normal session example output

For example, the following command shows that a new TCP session (protocol number 6) with source IP address 11.1.1.11, source port 53386, destination IP address 12.1.1.11, and destination port 22 would be sent to FPM slot 2 by the DP2 processor.

```
diagnose load-balance dp find session normal 6 11.1.1.11 53386 12.1.1.11 22
=====
MBD SN: F7KF503E17900068
Primary Bin 9708928
New session to slot 2 (src-dst-ip-sport-dport)
```

Additional information about the session also appears in the command output in some cases.

Managing individual FortiGate-7000 FIMs and FPMs

You can manage individual FIMs and FPMs using special port numbers or the `execute load-balance slot manage` command. You can also use the `execute ha manage` command to log in to the other FortiGate-7000 in an HA configuration.

Special management port numbers

In some cases, you may want to connect to individual FIMs or FPMs to view status information or perform a maintenance task such as installing firmware or performing a restart. You can connect to the GUI or CLI of individual FIMs or FPMs in a FortiGate-7000 using the SLBC management interface IP address with a special port number.

You use the following command to configure the SLBC management interface:

```
config global
  config load-balance setting
    set slbc-mgmt-intf <interface>
  end
```

Where <interface> becomes the SLBC management interface.



To enable using the special management port numbers to connect to individual FIMs and FPMs, the SLBC management interface must be connected to a network, have a valid IP address, and have management or administrative access enabled. To block access to the special management port numbers, disconnect the mgmt interface from a network, configure the SLBC management interface with an invalid IP address, or disable management or administrative access for the SLBC management interface.

You can connect to the GUI or CLI of individual FIMs or FPMs using the SLBC management interface IP address followed by a special port number. For example, if the SLBC management interface IP address is 192.168.1.99, to connect to the GUI of the FPM in slot 3, browse to:

`https://192.168.1.99:44303`

The special port number (in this case 44303) is a combination of the service port (for HTTPS, the service port is 443) and the slot number (in this example, 03).

You can view the special HTTPS management port number for and log in to the GUI of an FIM or FPM from the Configuration Sync Monitor.

The following table lists the special port numbers to use to connect to each FortiGate-7000 slot using common management protocols.



You can't change the special management port numbers. Changing configurable management port numbers, for example the HTTPS management port (which you might change to support SSL VPN), does not affect the special management port numbers.

FortiGate-7000 special management port numbers (slot numbers in order as installed in the chassis)

Slot Number	Slot Address	HTTP (80)	HTTPS (443)	Telnet (23)	SSH (22)	SNMP (161)
5	FPM05	8005	44305	2305	2205	16105
3	FPM03	8003	44303	2303	2203	16103
1	FIM01	8001	44301	2301	2201	16101
2	FIM02	8002	44302	2302	2202	16102
4	FPM04	8004	44304	2304	2204	16104
6	FPM06	8006	44306	2306	2206	16106

For example, to connect to the GUI of the FIM in slot 2 using HTTPS you would browse to <https://192.168.1.99:44302>.

To verify which FIM or FPM you have logged into, the GUI header banner and the CLI prompt shows its hostname. The System Information dashboard widget also shows the host name and serial number. The CLI prompt also shows the slot address in the format `<hostname> [<slot address>] #`.

Logging in to different FIMs or FPMs allows you to use dashboard widgets, FortiView, or Monitor GUI pages to view the activity of that FIM or FPM. Even though you can log in to different modules, you can only make configuration changes from the primary FIM; which is usually the FIM in slot 1.

HA mode special management port numbers

In HA mode, you use the same special port numbers to connect to FIMs and FPMs in chassis 1 (chassis ID = 1) and different special port numbers to connect to FIMs and FPMs in chassis 2 (chassis ID = 2):

FortiGate-7000 HA special management port numbers

Chassis and Slot Number	Slot Address	HTTP (80)	HTTPS (443)	Telnet (23)	SSH (22)	SNMP (161)
Ch1 slot 5	FPM05	8005	44305	2305	2205	16105
Ch1 slot 3	FPM03	8003	44303	2303	2203	16103
Ch1 slot 1	FIM01	8001	44301	2301	2201	16101
Ch1 slot 2	FIM02	8002	44302	2302	2202	16102
Ch1 slot 4	FPM04	8004	44304	2304	2204	16104
Ch1 slot 6	FPM06	8006	44306	2306	2206	16106
Ch2 slot 5	FPM05	8025	44325	2325	2225	16125
Ch2 slot 3	FPM03	8023	44323	2323	2223	16123
Ch2 slot 1	FIM01	8021	44321	2321	2221	16121

Chassis and Slot Number	Slot Address	HTTP (80)	HTTPS (443)	Telnet (23)	SSH (22)	SNMP (161)
Ch2 slot 2	FIM02	8022	44322	2322	2222	16122
Ch2 slot 4	FPM04	8024	44324	2324	2224	16124
Ch2 slot 6	FPM06	8026	44326	2326	2226	16126

Managing individual FIMs and FPMs from the CLI

From any CLI, you can use the `execute load-balance slot manage <slot>` command to log into the CLI of different FIMs and FPMs. You can use this command to view the status or configuration of the module, restart the module, or perform other operations. You should not change the configuration of individual FIMs or FPMs because this can cause configuration synchronization errors.

`<slot>` is the slot number of the slot that you want to log in to.

After you log in to a different module in this way, you can't use the `execute load-balance slot manage` command to log in to another module. Instead, you must use the `exit` command to revert back to the CLI of the component that you originally logged in to. Then you can use the `execute load-balance slot manage` command to log into another module.

Connecting to individual FIM and FPM CLIs of the secondary FortiGate-7000 in an HA configuration

From the primary FIM of the primary FortiGate-7000 in an HA configuration, you can use the following command to log in to the primary FIM of the secondary FortiGate-7000:

```
execute ha manage <id>
```

Where `<id>` is the ID of the other FortiGate-7000 in the cluster. From the primary FortiGate-7000, use an ID of 0 to log into the secondary FortiGate-7000. From the secondary FortiGate-7000, use an ID of 1 to log into the primary FortiGate-7000. You can enter the `?` to see the list of IDs that you can connect to.

After you have logged in, you can manage the secondary FortiGate-7000 from the primary FIM or you can use the `execute-load-balance slot manage` command to connect to the CLIs of the other FIM and the FPMs in the secondary FortiGate-7000.

Firmware upgrades

In addition to introducing the basics of upgrading FortiGate-7000 firmware, this section describes how to:

- Upgrade the firmware running on individual FIMs and FPMs.
- Upgrade individual FIM or FPM firmware from the BIOS.

Firmware upgrade basics

All of the FIMs and FPMs in your FortiGate-7000 system run the same firmware image. You upgrade the firmware from the primary FIM GUI or CLI just as you would any FortiGate product.

You can perform a graceful firmware upgrade of a FortiGate-7000 FGCP HA cluster by enabling `uninterruptible-upgrade` and `session-pickup`. A graceful firmware upgrade only causes minimal traffic interruption.

Upgrading the firmware of a standalone FortiGate-7000, or FortiGate-7000 HA cluster with `uninterruptible-upgrade` disabled interrupts traffic because the firmware running on the FIMs and FPMs upgrades in one step. These firmware upgrades should be done during a quiet time because traffic will be interrupted during the upgrade process.

A firmware upgrade takes a few minutes, depending on the number of FIMs and FPMs in your FortiGate-7000 system. Some firmware upgrades may take longer depending on factors such as the size of the configuration.

Before beginning a firmware upgrade, Fortinet recommends that you perform the following tasks:

- Review the latest release notes for the firmware version that you are upgrading to.
- Verify the recommended upgrade path as documented in the release notes.
- Back up your FortiGate-7000 configuration.



Fortinet recommends that you review the services provided by your FortiGate-7000 before a firmware upgrade and then again after the upgrade to make sure the services continues to operate normally. For example, you might want to verify that you can successfully access an important server used by your organization before the upgrade and make sure that you can still reach the server after the upgrade, and performance is comparable. You can also take a snapshot of key performance indicators (for example, number of sessions, CPU usage, and memory usage) before the upgrade and verify that you see comparable performance after the upgrade.

Verifying that a firmware upgrade is successful

After a FortiGate-7000 firmware upgrade, you should verify that all of the FIMs and FPMs have been successfully upgraded to the new firmware version.

After the firmware upgrade appears to be complete:

1. Log into the primary FIM and verify that it is running the expected firmware version.
You can verify the firmware version running on the primary FIM from the System Information dashboard widget or by using the `get system status` command.
2. Confirm that the FortiGate-7000 is synchronized.
Go to **Monitor > Configuration Sync Monitor** to verify the configuration status of the FIMs and FPMs. You can also use the `diagnose sys confsync status | grep in_sy` command to see if the FIMs and FPMs are all synchronized. In the command output, `in_sync=1` means the FIM or FPM is synchronized. `in_sync=0` means the FIM or FPM is not synchronized, which could indicate the FIM or FPM is running a different firmware build than the primary FIM.
3. Optionally, you can also log into the other FIM and FPMs, and in the same way confirm that they are also running the expected firmware version and are synchronized.

Installing firmware on individual FIMs or FPMs

You can install firmware on individual FIMs or FPMs by logging into the FIM or FPM GUI or CLI. You can also setup a console connection to the FortiGate-7000 front panel SMM and install firmware on individual FIMs or FPMs from a TFTP server after interrupting the FIM or FPM boot up sequence from the BIOS.

Normally you wouldn't need to upgrade the firmware on individual FIMs or FPMs because the FortiGate-7000 keeps the firmware on all of the FIMs and FPMs synchronized. However, FIM or FPM firmware may go out of sync in the following situations:

- Communication issues during a normal FortiGate-7000 firmware upgrade.
- Installing a replacement FIM or FPM that is running a different firmware version.
- Installing firmware on or formatting an FIM or FPM from the BIOS.

To verify the firmware versions on each FIM or FPM you can check individual FIM and FPM GUIs or enter the `get system status` command from each FIM or FPM CLI. You can also use the `diagnose sys confsync status | grep in_sy` command to see if the FIMs and FPMs are all synchronized. In the command output, `in_sync=1` means the FIM or FPM is synchronized. `in_sync=0` means the FIM or FPM is not synchronized, which could indicate the FIM or FPM is running a different firmware build than the primary FIM.

The procedures in this section work for FIMs or FPMs in a standalone FortiGate-7000. These procedures also work for FIMs or FPMs in the primary FortiGate-7000 in an HA configuration. To upgrade firmware on an FIM or FPM in the secondary FortiGate-7000 in an HA configuration, you should either remove the secondary FortiGate-7000 from the HA configuration or cause a failover so that the secondary FortiGate-7000 becomes the primary FortiGate-7000.

In general, if you need to update both FIMs and FPMs in the same FortiGate-7000, you should update the FIMs first as the FPMs can only communicate through FIM interfaces.

Upgrading the firmware on an individual FIM

During the upgrade, the FIM will not be able to process traffic. However, the other FIM and the FPMs should continue to operate normally.

To upgrade the firmware on a individual FIM from the GUI

1. Connect to the FIM GUI using the SLBC management IP address and the special management port number for that FIM. For example, for the FIM in slot 2, browse to `https://<SLBC-management-ip>:44302`.
2. Start a normal firmware upgrade. For example,
 - a. Go to **System > Firmware** and select **Browse** to select the firmware file to install.
 - b. Follow the prompts to select the firmware file, save the configuration, and upload the firmware file to the FPM.
3. After the FIM restarts, verify that the new firmware has been installed.

You can do this from the FIM GUI dashboard or from the FIM CLI using the `get system status` command.

4. Use the `diagnose sys confsync status | grep in_sy` command to verify that the configuration of the FIM has been synchronized. The field `in_sync=1` indicates that the configurations of that FIM or FPM is synchronized.

FIMs and FPMs that are missing or that show `in_sync=0` are not synchronized. To synchronize an FIM or FPM that is not synchronized, log into the CLI of the FIM or FPM and restart it using the `execute reboot` command. If this does not solve the problem, contact Fortinet Support at <https://support.fortinet.com>.

If you enter the `diagnose sys confsync status | grep in_sy` command before the FIM has completely restarted, it will not appear in the command output. As well, the Configuration Sync Monitor will temporarily show that it is not synchronized.

To upgrade the firmware on a individual FIM from the CLI using TFTP

1. Put a copy of the firmware file on a TFTP server that is accessible from the SLBC management interface.
2. Connect to the FIM CLI by using an SSH client. For example, to connect to the CLI of the FIM in slot 2, connect to `<SLBC-management-ip>:2201`.
3. Enter the following command to upload the firmware file to the FIM:
`execute upload image tftp <firmware-filename> comment <tftp-server-ip-address>`
4. After the FIM restarts, verify that the new firmware has been installed.

You can do this from the FIM GUI dashboard or from the FIM CLI using the `get system status` command.

5. Use the `diagnose sys confsync status | grep in_sy` command to verify that the configuration of the FIM has been synchronized. The field `in_sync=1` indicates that the configurations of that FIM or FPM is synchronized.

FIMs and FPMs that are missing or that show `in_sync=0` are not synchronized. To synchronize an FIM or FPM that is not synchronized, log into the CLI of the FIM or FPM and restart it using the `execute reboot` command. If this does not solve the problem, contact Fortinet Support at <https://support.fortinet.com>.

If you enter the `diagnose sys confsync status | grep in_sy` command before the FIM has completely restarted, it will not appear in the command output. As well, the Configuration Sync Monitor will temporarily show that it is not synchronized.

Upgrading the firmware on an individual FPM

Use the following procedure to upgrade the firmware running on an individual FPM. To perform the upgrade, you must enter a command from the primary FIM CLI to allow ELBC communication with the FPM. Then you can just log in to the FPM GUI or CLI and perform the firmware upgrade.

During this procedure, the FPM will not be able to process traffic. However, the other FPMs and the FIMs should continue to operate normally.

After verifying that the FPM is running the right firmware, you must log back into the primary FIM CLI and return the FPM to normal operation.

1. Log in to the primary FIM CLI and enter the following command:

```
diagnose load-balance switch set-compatible <slot> enable elbc
```

Where <slot> is the number of the slot containing the FPM to be upgraded.

2. Log in to the FPM GUI or CLI using its special port number.

To upgrade the firmware on the FPM in slot 3 from the GUI:

- a. Connect to the FPM GUI by browsing to <https://<SLBC-management-ip>:44303>.
- b. Go to **System > Firmware** and select **Browse** to select the firmware file to install.
- c. Follow the prompts to select the firmware file, save the configuration, and upload the firmware file to the FPM.

To upgrade the firmware on an FPM from the CLI using TFTP see [Installing FPM firmware from the BIOS after a reboot](#).

3. After the FPM restarts, verify that the new firmware has been installed.

You can do this from the FPM GUI dashboard or from the FPM CLI using the `get system status` command.

4. Use the `diagnose sys confsync status | grep in_sy` to verify that the configuration has been synchronized. The field `in_sync=1` indicates that the configurations of that FIM or FPM is synchronized.

FIMs and FPMs that are missing or that show `in_sync=0` are not synchronized. To synchronize an FIM or FPM that is not synchronized, log into the CLI of the FIM or FPM and restart it using the `execute reboot` command. If this does not solve the problem, contact Fortinet Support at <https://support.fortinet.com>.

If you enter the `diagnose sys confsync status | grep in_sy` command before the FIM has completely restarted, it will not appear in the command output. As well, the Configuration Sync Monitor will temporarily show that it is not synchronized.

5. Once the FPM is operating normally, log back in to the primary FIM CLI and enter the following command to reset the FPM to normal operation:

```
diagnose load-balance switch set-compatible <slot> disable
```

Configuration synchronization errors will occur if you do not reset the FPM to normal operation.

Installing FIM firmware from the BIOS after a reboot

Use the following procedure to upload firmware from a TFTP server to an FIM. The procedure involves creating a connection between the TFTP server and one of the FIM MGMT interfaces. You don't have to use a MGMT interface on the FIM that you are upgrading.

This procedure also involves connecting to the FIM CLI using a FortiGate-7000 front panel System Management Module console port. From the console session, the procedure describes how to restart the FIM, interrupt the boot process, and follow FIM BIOS prompts to install the firmware.

During this procedure, the FIM will not be able to process traffic. However, the other FIM and the FPMs should continue to operate normally.

1. Set up a TFTP server and copy the firmware file to the TFTP server default folder.
2. Set up your network to allow traffic between the TFTP server and one of the FIM MGMT interfaces.

If the MGMT interface you are using is one of the MGMT interfaces connected as a LAG to a switch, you must shutdown or disconnect all of the other interfaces that are part of the LAG from the switch. This includes MGMT interfaces from both FIMs.

3. Using the console cable supplied with your FortiGate-7000, connect the SMM Console 1 port on the FortiGate-7000 to the USB port on your management computer.
4. Start a terminal emulation program on the management computer. Use these settings:
Baud Rate (bps) 9600, Data bits 8, Parity None, Stop bits 1, and Flow Control None.
5. Press Ctrl-T to enter console switch mode.
6. Repeat pressing Ctrl-T until you have connected to the FIM to be updated. Example prompt for the FIM in slot 2:
`<Switching to Console: FIM02 (9600)>`
7. Optionally log in to the FIM's CLI.
8. Reboot the FIM.
You can do this using the `execute reboot` command from the CLI or by pressing the power switch on the FIM front panel.
9. When the FIM starts up, follow the boot process in the terminal session, and press any key when prompted to interrupt the boot process.
10. To set up the TFTP configuration, press C.
11. Use the BIOS menu to set the following. Change settings only if required.
[P]: Set image download port: MGMT1 (the connected MGMT interface.)
[D]: Set DHCP mode: Disabled
[I]: Set local IP address: The IP address of the MGMT interface that you want to use to connect to the TFTP server. This address must not be the same as the FortiGate-7000 management IP address and cannot conflict with other addresses on your network.
[S]: Set local Subnet Mask: Set as required for your network.
[G]: Set local gateway: Set as required for your network.
[V]: Local VLAN ID: Should be set to <none>. (use -1 to set the Local VLAN ID to <none>.)
[T]: Set remote TFTP server IP address: The IP address of the TFTP server.
[F]: Set firmware image file name: The name of the firmware image file that you want to install.
12. To quit this menu, press Q.
13. To review the configuration, press R.
To make corrections, press C and make the changes as required. When the configuration is correct, proceed to the next step.
14. To start the TFTP transfer, press T.
The firmware image is uploaded from the TFTP server and installed on the FIM. The FIM then restarts with its configuration reset to factory defaults. After restarting, the FIM configuration is synchronized to match the configuration of the primary FIM. The FIM restarts again and can start processing traffic.
15. Once the FIM restarts, verify that the correct firmware is installed.
You can do this from the FIM GUI dashboard or from the FIM CLI using the `get system status` command.
16. Use the `diagnose sys confsync status | grep in_sy` command to verify that the configuration has been synchronized. The field `in_sync=1` indicates that the configurations of the FIM or FPM is synchronized.
FIMs and FPMs that are missing or that show `in_sync=0` are not synchronized. To synchronize an FIM or FPM that is not synchronized, log into the CLI of the FIM or FPM and restart it using the `execute reboot` command. If this does not solve the problem, contact Fortinet Support at <https://support.fortinet.com>.
If you enter the `diagnose sys confsync status | grep in_sy` command before the FIM has restarted, it will not appear in the command output. As well, the Configuration Sync Monitor will temporarily show that it is not synchronized.

Installing FPM firmware from the BIOS after a reboot

Use the following procedure to upload firmware from a TFTP server to an FPM. To perform the upgrade, you must enter a command from the primary FIM CLI to allow the FPM BIOS to communicate through an FIM MGMT interface. The procedure involves creating a connection between the TFTP server and one of the FIM MGMT interfaces.

This procedure also involves connecting to the FPM CLI using a FortiGate-7000 front panel SMM console port, rebooting the FPM, interrupting the boot from the console session, and following FPM BIOS prompts to install the firmware.

During this procedure, the FPM will not be able to process traffic. However, the other FPMs and the FIMs should continue to operate normally.

After you verify that the FPM is running the right firmware, you must log back in to the primary FIM CLI and return the FPM to normal operation.

1. Set up a TFTP server and copy the firmware file into the TFTP server default folder.
2. Log into to the primary FIM CLI and enter the following command:
`diagnose load-balance switch set-compatible <slot> enable bios`
Where <slot> is the number of the FortiGate-7000 slot containing the FPM to be upgraded.
3. Set up your network to allow traffic between the TFTP server and a MGMT interface of one of the FIMs.
You can use any MGMT interface of either of the FIMs. When you set up the FPM TFTP settings below, you select the FIM that can connect to the TFTP server. If the MGMT interface you are using is one of the MGMT interfaces connected as a LAG to a switch, you must shutdown or disconnect all of the other interfaces that are part of the LAG from the switch. This includes MGMT interfaces from both FIMs
4. Using the console cable supplied with your FortiGate-7000, connect the SMM Console 1 port on the FortiGate-7000 to the USB port on your management computer.
5. Start a terminal emulation program on the management computer. Use these settings:
Baud Rate (bps) 9600, Data bits 8, Parity None, Stop bits 1, and Flow Control None.
6. Press Ctrl-T to enter console switch mode.
7. Repeat pressing Ctrl-T until you have connected to the module to be updated. Example prompt:
<Switching to Console: FPM03 (9600)>
8. Optionally log into the FPM's CLI.
9. Reboot the FPM.
You can do this using the `execute reboot` command from the FPM's CLI or by pressing the power switch on the FPM front panel.
10. When the FPM starts up, follow the boot process in the terminal session and press any key when prompted to interrupt the boot process.
11. To set up the TFTP configuration, press C.
12. Use the BIOS menu to set the following. Change settings only if required.
[P]: Set image download port: FIM01 (the FIM that can communicate with the TFTP server).
[D]: Set DHCP mode: Disabled.
[I]: Set local IP address: The IP address of the MGMT interface of the selected FIM that you want to use to connect to the TFTP server. This address must not be the same as the FortiGate-7000 management IP address and cannot conflict with other addresses on your network.
[S]: Set local Subnet Mask: Set as required for your network.
[G]: Set local gateway: Set as required for your network.
[V]: Local VLAN ID: Should be set to <none>. (use -1 to set the Local VLAN ID to <none>.)

[T]: Set remote TFTP server IP address: The IP address of the TFTP server.

[F]: Set firmware image file name: The name of the firmware image file that you want to install.

13. To quit this menu, press Q.

14. To review the configuration, press R.

To make corrections, press C and make the changes as required. When the configuration is correct proceed to the next step.

15. To start the TFTP transfer, press T.

The firmware image is uploaded from the TFTP server and installed on the FPM. The FPM then restarts with its configuration reset to factory defaults. After restarting, the FPM configuration is synchronized to match the configuration of the primary FPM. The FPM restarts again and can start processing traffic.

16. Once the FPM restarts, verify that the correct firmware is installed.

You can do this from the FPM GUI dashboard or from the FPM CLI using the `get system status` command.

17. Enter the `diagnose sys confsync status | grep in_sy` command to verify that the configuration has been synchronized. The field `in_sync=1` indicates that the configurations of the FIMs and FPMs are synchronized.

FIMs and FPMs that are missing or that show `in_sync=0` are not synchronized. To synchronize an FIM or FPM that is not synchronized, log into the CLI of the FIM or FPM and restart it using the `execute reboot` command. If this does not solve the problem, contact Fortinet Support at <https://support.fortinet.com>.

If you enter the `diagnose sys confsync status | grep in_sy` command before the FPM has restarted, it will not appear in the command output. As well, the Configuration Sync Monitor will temporarily show that it is not synchronized.

18. Once the FPM is operating normally, log back in to the primary FIM CLI and enter the following command to reset the FPM to normal operation:

```
diagnose load-balance switch set-compatible <slot> disable
```

Configuration synchronization errors will occur if you do not reset the FPM to normal operation.

Synchronizing FIMs and FPMs after upgrading the primary FIM firmware from the BIOS

After you install firmware on the primary FIM from the BIOS after a reboot, the firmware version and configuration of the primary FIM will most likely be not be synchronized with the other FIMs and FPMs. You can verify this from the primary FIM CLI using the `diagnose sys confsync status | grep in_sy` command. The `in_sync=0` entries in the following example output show that the management board (serial number ending in 10) is not synchronized with the other FIM and the FPMs shown in the example.

```
diagnose sys confsync status | grep in_sy
FIM10E3E16000040, Slave, uptime=69346.99, priority=2, slot_id=1:2, idx=1, flag=0x0, in_sync=0
FIM04E3E16000010, Master, uptime=69398.91, priority=1, slot_id=1:1, idx=0, flag=0x0, in_sync=1
FPM20E3E17900217, Slave, uptime=69387.74, priority=20, slot_id=1:4, idx=2, flag=0x64, in_sync=0
FIM04E3E16000010, Master, uptime=69398.91, priority=1, slot_id=1:1, idx=0, flag=0x0, in_sync=1
...
```

You can also verify synchronization status from the primary FIM Configuration Sync Monitor.

To re-synchronize the FortiGate-7000, which has the effect of resetting the other FIM and the FPMs, re-install firmware on the primary FIM.



You can also manually install firmware on each individual FIM and FPM from the BIOS after a reboot. This manual process is just as effective as installing the firmware for a second time on the primary FIM to trigger synchronization to the FIM and the FPMs, but takes much longer.

1. Log into the primary FIM GUI.
2. Install a firmware build on the primary FIM from the GUI or CLI. The firmware build you install on the primary FIM can either be the same firmware build or a different one.
Installing firmware synchronizes the firmware build and configuration from the primary FIM to the other FIM and the FPMs.
3. Check the synchronization status from the Configuration Sync Monitor or using the `diagnose sys confsync status | grep in_sy` command.

Load balancing and flow rules

This chapter provides an overview of how FortiGate-7000 Session-Aware Load Balancing (SLBC) works and then breaks down the details and explains why you might want to change some load balancing settings.

FortiGate-7000 SLBC works as follows.

1. The FortiGate-7000 directs all traffic that does not match a load balancing flow rule to the DP2 processors.
If a session matches a flow rule, the session skips the DP2 processors and is directed according to the action setting of the flow rule. Default flow rules send traffic that can't be load balanced to the primary (or master) FPM. See [Default configuration for traffic that cannot be load balanced on page 77](#).
2. The DP2 processors load balance TCP, UDP, SCTP, and IPv4 ICMP sessions among the FPMs according to the load balancing method set by the `dp-load-distribution-method` option of the `config load-balance setting` command.
The DP2 processors load balance ICMP sessions among FPMs according to the load balancing method set by the `dp-icmp-distribution-method` option of the `config load-balance setting` command. See [ICMP load balancing on page 74](#).
3. The DP2 processors send other sessions that cannot be load balanced to the primary FPM.

Setting the load balancing method

Sessions are load balanced or distributed based on the load balancing method set by the following command:

```
config load-balance setting
    set dp-load-distribution-method {to-master | src-ip | dst-ip | src-dst-ip | src-ip-sport
    | dst-ip-dport | src-dst-ip-sport-dport}
end
```

The default load balancing method, `src-dst-ip-sport-dport`, distributes sessions across all FPMs according to their source and destination IP address, source port, and destination port. This load balancing method represents true session-aware load balancing. Session aware load balancing takes all session information into account when deciding where to send new sessions and where to send additional packets that are part of an already established session.

For information about the other load balancing methods, see [config load-balance setting on page 182](#).

Flow rules for sessions that cannot be load balanced

Some traffic types cannot be load balanced. Sessions for traffic types that cannot be load balanced should normally be sent to the primary (or master) FPM by configuring flow rules for that traffic. You can also configure flow rules to send traffic that cannot be load balanced to specific FPMs.

Create flow rules using the `config load-balance flow-rule` command. The default configuration uses this command to send Kerberos, BGP, RIP, IPv4 and IPv6 DHCP, PPTP, BFD, IPv4 and IPv6 multicast, GTP, and HTTP and HTTPS authd sessions to the primary FPM. The default configuration also sends VRRP traffic to all FPMs. You can view

the default configuration of the `config load-balance flow-rule` command to see how this is all configured, or see [Default configuration for traffic that cannot be load balanced on page 77](#).

For example, the following configuration sends BGP source and destination sessions to the primary FPM:

```
config load-balance flow-rule
edit 3
    set status enable
    set vlan 0
    set ether-type ip
    set protocol tcp
    set src-l4port 179-179
    set dst-l4port 0-0
    set tcp-flag any
    set action forward
    set forward-slot master
    set priority 5
    set comment "bgp src"
next
edit 4
    set status enable
    set vlan 0
    set ether-type ip
    set protocol tcp
    set src-l4port 0-0
    set dst-l4port 179-179
    set tcp-flag any
    set action forward
    set forward-slot master
    set priority 5
    set comment "bgp dst"
end
```

Determining the primary FPM

You can determine which FPM is operating as the primary (master) FPM by hovering over the FPMs in the Security Fabric dashboard widget. The FPM operating as the primary FPM will have a **Status of Master Blade**.

You can also use the `diagnose load-balance status` command to determine which FPM is operating as the primary FPM.

The following example `diagnose load-balance status` output for a FortiGate-7060E showing that the FPM in slot 3 is the primary (master) FPM. The command output also shows the status of all of the FPMs in the FortiGate-7060E. The output also shows that the FPM in slot 4 is either missing or down.

```
diagnose load-balance status
=====
Slot: 2  Module SN: FIM04E3E16000222
  FIM02: FIM04E3E16000222
  Master FPM Blade: slot-3

  Slot 3: FPM20E3E17900133
    Status:Working  Function:Active
    Link:          Base: Up          Fabric: Up
```

```

Heartbeat: Management: Good    Data: Good
Status Message:"Running"
Slot 4:
  Status:Dead      Function:Active
  Link:      Base: Up      Fabric: Down
  Heartbeat: Management: Failed Data: Failed
  Status Message:"Waiting for management heartbeat."
Slot 5: FPM20E3E17900152
  Status:Working   Function:Active
  Link:      Base: Up      Fabric: Up
  Heartbeat: Management: Good    Data: Good
  Status Message:"Running"
Slot 6: FPM20E3E17900202
  Status:Working   Function:Active
  Link:      Base: Up      Fabric: Up
  Heartbeat: Management: Good    Data: Good
  Status Message:"Running"

```

SSL VPN load balancing

Using a FortiGate-7000 as an SSL VPN server requires you to manually add an SSL VPN load balancing flow rule to configure the FortiGate-7000 to send all SSL VPN sessions to the primary FPM. To match SSL VPN server traffic, the flow rule should include a destination port that matches the destination port of the SSL VPN server. A basic rule to allow SSL VPN traffic could be:

```

config load-balance flow-rule
  edit 0
    set status enable
    set ether-type ipv4
    set protocol tcp
    set dst-l4port 443-443
    set forward-slot master
    set comment "ssl vpn server to primary worker"
  end

```

This flow rule matches all sessions sent to port 443 (the default SSL VPN server listening port) and sends these sessions to the primary FPM. This should match all of your SSL VPN traffic if you are using the default SSL VPN server listening port (443). This flow rule also matches all other sessions using 443 as the destination port so all of this traffic is also sent to the primary FPM.



As a best practice, if you add a flow rule for SSL VPN, Fortinet recommends using a custom SSL VPN port (for example, 10443 instead of 443). This can improve performance by allowing SSL traffic on port 443 that is not part of your SSL VPN to be load balanced to FPMs instead of being sent to the primary FPM by the SSL VPN flow rule.

If you change the SSL VPN server listening port

If you have changed the SSL VPN server listening port to 10443, you can change the SSL VPN flow rule as follows:

```

config load-balance flow-rule
  edit 26

```

```
set status enable
set ether-type ipv4
set protocol tcp
set dst-l4port 10443-10443
set forward-slot master
set comment "ssl vpn server to primary worker"
end
```

You can also make the SSL VPN flow rule more specific by including the SSL VPN server interface in the flow rule. For example, if your FortiGate-7000 listens for SSL VPN sessions on the 1-B4 interface:

```
config load-balance flow-rule
edit 26
set status enable
set ether-type ipv4
set protocol tcp
set src-interface 1-B4
set dst-l4port 10443-10443
set forward-slot master
set comment "ssl vpn server to primary worker"
end
```

Adding the SSL VPN server IP address

You can also add the IP address of the FortiGate-7000 interface that receives SSL VPN traffic to the SSL VPN flow rule to make sure that the flow rule only matches the traffic of SSL VPN clients connecting to the SSL VPN server. For example, if the IP address of the interface is 172.25.176.32:

```
config load-balance flow-rule
edit 26
set status enable
set ether-type ipv4
set protocol tcp
set dst-addr-ipv4 172.25.176.32 255.255.255.255
set dst-l4port 10443-10443
set forward-slot master
set comment "ssl vpn server to primary worker"
end
```

This flow rule will now only match SSL VPN sessions with 172.25.176.32 as the destination address and send all of these sessions to the primary FPM.

FortiOS Carrier GTP load balancing

If you are operating a FortiGate-7000 system that is licensed for FortiOS Carrier (also called FortiCarrier), you can use the information in this section to optimize GTP performance. The commands and settings in this chapter only apply if your FortiGate-7000 has a FortiOS Carrier license.

Optimizing NPU GTP performance

You can use the following command to optimize GTP performance:

```
config system npu
  set gtp-enhance-mode enable
end
```

There are independent Receive and Transmit queues for GTP-U processes. These queues and their associated resources are initialized when `gtp-enhance-mode` is enabled. After entering this command you should restart your FortiGate-7000 to initialize the changes.

If you restore a configuration file, and if that restored configuration file has a different `gtp-enhance-mode` setting you should restart your FortiGate-7000 to initialize the changes.

You can also use the following command to select the CPUs that can perform GTP-U packet inspection.

```
config system npu
  set gtp-enhance-cpu-range {0 | 1 | 2}
end
```

Where:

- 0 all CPUs will process GTP-U packets
- 1 only primary CPUs will process GTP-U packets.
- 2 only secondary CPUs will process GTP-U packets.

Enabling GTP load balancing

You can use the following load balancing command to enable or disable GTP load balancing.

```
config load-balance setting
  config gtp-load-balance {disable | enable}
end
```

The following flow rule is also available to direct GTP-C traffic to the primary FPM.

```
config load-balance flow-rule
  edit 17
    set ether-type ipv4
    set protocol udp
    set dst-l4port 2123-2123
    set comment "gtp-c to master blade"
  next
end
```

By default, both of these configurations are disabled and GTP-C and GTP-U traffic is not load balanced. The DP processor sends all GTP-C and GTP-U traffic to the primary FPM.

To load balance GTP-U traffic to multiple FPMs, you can set `gtp-load-balance` to `enable`. This also enables the GTP-C flow rule. GTP-U traffic is then load balanced across all FPMs while GTP-C traffic is still handled by the primary FPM. This is the recommended configuration for load balancing GTP traffic.

GTP-U load balancing may not distribute sessions evenly among all of the FPMs. Its common in many 4G networks to have just a few SGWs. Similar configurations with very few servers may also be used in other GTP implementations. If the FortiGate-7000 receives GTP traffic from a very few servers, the GTP traffic will have very few source and destination IP addresses and TCP/IP ports. Since SLBC load balancing is based on source and destination IP addresses and TCP ports, its possible that sessions will not be distributed evenly among the FPMs. In fact, most GTP-U traffic could be processed by a limited number of FPMs.

Enabling GTP-U load balancing still distributes sessions and improves performance, but performance gains from enabling GTP-U load balancing may not be as high as anticipated.

ICMP load balancing

You can use the following option to configure load balancing for ICMP sessions:

```
config load-balance setting
    set dp-icmp-distribution-method {to-master | src-ip | dst-ip | src-dst-ip | derived}
end
```

The default setting is `to-master` and all ICMP traffic is sent to the primary (master) FPM.

If you want to load balance ICMP sessions to multiple FPMs, you can select one of the other options. You can load balance ICMP sessions by source IP address, by destination IP address, or by source and destination IP address.

You can also select `derived` to load balance ICMP sessions using the `dp-load-distribution-method` setting. Since port-based ICMP load balancing is not possible, if `dp-load-distribution-method` is set to a load balancing method that includes ports, ICMP load balancing will use the equivalent load balancing method that does not include ports. For example, if `dp-load-distribution-method` is set to the `src-dst-ip-sport-dport` (the default) then ICMP load balancing will use `src-dst-ip` load balancing.

Load balancing fragmented ICMP packets

This section describes how the FortiGate-7000 DP2 processor supports efficient load balancing of fragmented ICMP packets. When the DP2 processor receives a header fragment packet, if a matching session is found, the DP2 processor creates an additional fragment session matching the source-ip, destination-ip, and IP identifier (IPID) of the header fragment packet. Subsequent non-header fragments will match this fragment session and be forwarded to the same FPM as the header fragment.

You can use the following command to enable or disable this method of handling fragmented ICMP packets. The option is enabled by default.

```
config load-balance setting
    set dp-fragment-session {disable | enable}
end
```

If you disable `dp-fragment-session`, the DP2 processor broadcasts all non-header fragmented ICMP packets to all FPMs. FPMs that also received the header fragments of these packets re-assemble the packets correctly. FPMs that did not receive the header fragments discard the non-header fragments.

The age of the fragment session can be controlled using the following command:

```
config system global
    set dp-fragment-timer <timer>
end
```

The default `<timer>` value is 120 seconds.

Adding flow rules to support DHCP relay

The FortiGate-7000 default flow rules may not handle DHCP relay traffic correctly.

The default configuration includes the following flow rules for DHCP traffic:

```
config load-balance flow-rule
  edit 7
    set status enable
    set vlan 0
    set ether-type ipv4
    set src-addr-ipv4 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0
    set dst-addr-ipv4 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0
    set protocol udp
    set src-l4port 67-67
    set dst-l4port 68-68
    set action forward
    set forward-slot master
    set priority 5
    set comment "dhcpv4 server to client"
  next
  edit 8
    set status enable
    set vlan 0
    set ether-type ipv4
    set src-addr-ipv4 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0
    set dst-addr-ipv4 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0
    set protocol udp
    set src-l4port 68-68
    set dst-l4port 67-67
    set action forward
    set forward-slot master
    set priority 5
    set comment "dhcpv4 client to server"
  end
```

These flow rules handle traffic when the DHCP client sends requests to a DHCP server using port 68 and the DHCP server responds using port 67. However, if DHCP relay is involved, requests from the DHCP relay to the DHCP server and replies from the DHCP server to the DHCP relay both use port 67. If this DHCP relay traffic passes through the FortiGate-7000 you must add a flow rule similar to the following to support port 67 DHCP traffic in both directions (the following example uses `edit 0` to add the DHCP relay flow using the next available flow rule index number):

```
config load-balance flow-rule
  edit 0
    set status enable
    set vlan 0
    set ether-type ipv4
    set src-addr-ipv4 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0
    set dst-addr-ipv4 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0
    set protocol udp
    set src-l4port 67-67
    set dst-l4port 67-67
    set action forward
    set forward-slot master
    set priority 5
    set comment "dhcpv4 relay"
  next
```

The default configuration also includes the following flow rules for IPv6 DHCP traffic:

```
edit 13
    set status enable
    set vlan 0
    set ether-type ipv6
    set src-addr-ipv6 ::/0
    set dst-addr-ipv6 ::/0
    set protocol udp
    set src-l4port 547-547
    set dst-l4port 546-546
    set action forward
    set forward-slot master
    set priority 5
    set comment "dhcpv6 server to client"
next
edit 14
    set status enable
    set vlan 0
    set ether-type ipv6
    set src-addr-ipv6 ::/0
    set dst-addr-ipv6 ::/0
    set protocol udp
    set src-l4port 546-546
    set dst-l4port 547-547
    set action forward
    set forward-slot master
    set priority 5
    set comment "dhcpv6 client to server"
next
```

These flow rules handle traffic when the IPv6 DHCP client sends requests to a DHCP server using port 547 and the DHCP server responds using port 546. However, if DHCP relay is involved, requests from the DHCP relay to the DHCP server and replies from the DHCP server to the DHCP relay both use port 547. If this DHCP relay traffic passes through the FortiGate-7000 you must add a flow rule similar to the following to support port 547 DHCP traffic in both directions (the following example uses `edit 0` to add the DHCP relay flow using the next available flow rule index number):

```
config load-balance flow-rule
edit 0
    set status enable
    set vlan 0
    set ether-type ipv6
    set src-addr-ipv4 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0
    set dst-addr-ipv4 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0
    set protocol udp
    set src-l4port 547-547
    set dst-l4port 547-547
    set action forward
    set forward-slot master
    set priority 5
    set comment "dhcpv6 relay"
next
```


Default configuration for traffic that cannot be load balanced

The default `configure load-balance flow-rule` command contains the recommended default flow rules that control how the FortiGate-7000 handles traffic types that cannot be load balanced. All of the default flow rules identify the traffic type using the options available in the command and direct matching traffic to the primary (or master) FPM (action set to `forward` and `forward-slot` set to `master`). The default flow rules also include a comment that identifies the traffic type. Most of the flow rules in the default configuration are enabled and are intended to send common traffic types that cannot be load balanced to the primary FPC or FPM.

The default configuration also includes disabled flow rules for Kerberos and PPTP traffic. Normally, you would only need to enable these flow rules if you know that your FortiGate-7000 will be handling these types of traffic.

The CLI syntax below was created with the `show full configuration` command.

```
config load-balance flow-rule
  edit 1
    set status disable
    set vlan 0
    set ether-type ip
    set protocol udp
    set src-l4port 88-88
    set dst-l4port 0-0
    set action forward
    set forward-slot master
    set priority 5
    set comment "kerberos src"
  next
  edit 2
    set status disable
    set vlan 0
    set ether-type ip
    set protocol udp
    set src-l4port 0-0
    set dst-l4port 88-88
    set action forward
    set forward-slot master
    set priority 5
    set comment "kerberos dst"
  next
  edit 3
    set status enable
    set vlan 0
    set ether-type ip
    set protocol tcp
    set src-l4port 179-179
    set dst-l4port 0-0
    set tcp-flag any
    set action forward
    set forward-slot master
    set priority 5
    set comment "bgp src"
  next
  edit 4
    set status enable
    set vlan 0
```

```
        set ether-type ip
        set protocol tcp
        set src-l4port 0-0
        set dst-l4port 179-179
        set tcp-flag any
        set action forward
        set forward-slot master
        set priority 5
        set comment "bgp dst"
    next
edit 5
    set status enable
    set vlan 0
    set ether-type ip
    set protocol udp
    set src-l4port 520-520
    set dst-l4port 520-520
    set action forward
    set forward-slot master
    set priority 5
    set comment "rip"
next
edit 6
    set status enable
    set vlan 0
    set ether-type ipv6
    set src-addr-ipv6 ::/0
    set dst-addr-ipv6 ::/0
    set protocol udp
    set src-l4port 521-521
    set dst-l4port 521-521
    set action forward
    set forward-slot master
    set priority 5
    set comment "ripng"
next
edit 7
    set status enable
    set vlan 0
    set ether-type ipv4
    set src-addr-ipv4 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0
    set dst-addr-ipv4 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0
    set protocol udp
    set src-l4port 67-67
    set dst-l4port 68-68
    set action forward
    set forward-slot master
    set priority 5
    set comment "dhcipv4 server to client"
next
edit 8
    set status enable
    set vlan 0
    set ether-type ipv4
    set src-addr-ipv4 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0
    set dst-addr-ipv4 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0
```

```
        set protocol udp
        set src-l4port 68-68
        set dst-l4port 67-67
        set action forward
        set forward-slot master
        set priority 5
        set comment "dhcpv4 client to server"
next
edit 9
    set status disable
    set vlan 0
    set ether-type ip
    set protocol tcp
    set src-l4port 1723-1723
    set dst-l4port 0-0
    set tcp-flag any
    set action forward
    set forward-slot master
    set priority 5
    set comment "pptp src"
next
edit 10
    set status disable
    set vlan 0
    set ether-type ip
    set protocol tcp
    set src-l4port 0-0
    set dst-l4port 1723-1723
    set tcp-flag any
    set action forward
    set forward-slot master
    set priority 5
    set comment "pptp dst"
next
edit 11
    set status enable
    set vlan 0
    set ether-type ip
    set protocol udp
    set src-l4port 0-0
    set dst-l4port 3784-3784
    set action forward
    set forward-slot master
    set priority 5
    set comment "bfd control"
next
edit 12
    set status enable
    set vlan 0
    set ether-type ip
    set protocol udp
    set src-l4port 0-0
    set dst-l4port 3785-3785
    set action forward
    set forward-slot master
    set priority 5
```

```
        set comment "bfd echo"
next
edit 13
    set status enable
    set vlan 0
    set ether-type ipv6
    set src-addr-ipv6 ::/0
    set dst-addr-ipv6 ::/0
    set protocol udp
    set src-l4port 547-547
    set dst-l4port 546-546
    set action forward
    set forward-slot master
    set priority 5
    set comment "dhcpv6 server to client"
next
edit 14
    set status enable
    set vlan 0
    set ether-type ipv6
    set src-addr-ipv6 ::/0
    set dst-addr-ipv6 ::/0
    set protocol udp
    set src-l4port 546-546
    set dst-l4port 547-547
    set action forward
    set forward-slot master
    set priority 5
    set comment "dhcpv6 client to server"
next
edit 15
    set status enable
    set vlan 0
    set ether-type ipv4
    set src-addr-ipv4 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0
    set dst-addr-ipv4 224.0.0.0 240.0.0.0
    set protocol any
    set action forward
    set forward-slot master
    set priority 5
    set comment "ipv4 multicast"
next
edit 16
    set status enable
    set vlan 0
    set ether-type ipv6
    set src-addr-ipv6 ::/0
    set dst-addr-ipv6 ff00::/8
    set protocol any
    set action forward
    set forward-slot master
    set priority 5
    set comment "ipv6 multicast"
next
edit 17
    set status disable
```

```
    set vlan 0
    set ether-type ipv4
    set src-addr-ipv4 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0
    set dst-addr-ipv4 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0
    set protocol udp
    set src-l4port 0-0
    set dst-l4port 2123-2123
    set action forward
    set forward-slot master
    set priority 5
    set comment "gtp-c to master blade"
next
edit 18
    set status enable
    set vlan 0
    set ether-type ip
    set protocol tcp
    set src-l4port 0-0
    set dst-l4port 1000-1000
    set tcp-flag any
    set action forward
    set forward-slot master
    set priority 5
    set comment "authd http to master blade"
next
edit 19
    set status enable
    set vlan 0
    set ether-type ip
    set protocol tcp
    set src-l4port 0-0
    set dst-l4port 1003-1003
    set tcp-flag any
    set action forward
    set forward-slot master
    set priority 5
    set comment "authd https to master blade"
next
edit 20
    set status enable
    set vlan 0
    set ether-type ip
    set protocol vrrp
    set action forward
    set forward-slot all
    set priority 6
    set comment "vrrp to all blades"
next
end
```

FortiGate-7000 IPsec VPN

The following notes and limitations apply to FortiGate-7000 IPsec VPNs:

- Site-to-Site IPsec VPN is supported.
- Dialup IPsec VPN is supported. The FortiGate-7000 can be the dialup server or client.
- Interface-based IPsec VPN (also called route-based IPsec VPN) is supported. Policy-based IPsec VPN is not supported.
- Static routes can point at IPsec VPN interfaces and can be used for routing the traffic inside IPsec VPN tunnels.
- Policy routes cannot be used for communication over IPsec VPN tunnels.
- VRF routes cannot be used for communication over IPsec VPN tunnels.
- Remote networks with 0- to 15-bit netmasks are not supported. Remote networks with 16- to 32-bit netmasks are supported.
- IPv6 clear-text traffic (IPv6 over IPv4 or IPv6 over IPv6) is not supported.
- IPsec SA synchronization between HA peers is not supported. After an HA failover, IPsec VPN tunnels have to be re-initialized.
- Dynamic routing (RIP, OSPF, BGP) over IPsec VPN tunnels is supported.
- The FortiGate-7000 does not support load-balancing IPsec VPN tunnels to multiple FPMs.
- All IPsec VPN tunnels are terminated on the primary FPM and traffic between IPsec VPN tunnels is supported.

IPsec VPN load balancing

Since the FortiGate-7000 does not support IPsec VPN load balancing, the following option should always be disabled:

```
config load-balance setting
    set ipsec-load-balance disable
end
```

Disabling IPsec VPN load balancing sends all IPsec VPN sessions to the primary FPM.

Example IPv4 and IPv6 IPsec VPN flow rules

You can optionally add your own flow rules if you want to handle IPsec VPN sessions differently, for example, you could send IPsec VPN traffic to a different FPM instead of the primary FPM.

The following example IPv4 and IPv6 IPsec VPN flow rules send all IPv4 and IPv6 IPsec VPN traffic to the primary FPM. Normally you would not need these flow rules because IPsec VPN load balancing is disabled and all IPsec VPN traffic is just sent to the primary FPM.

```
edit 18
    set status enable
    set vlan 0
    set ether-type ipv6
    set src-addr-ipv6 ::/0
    set dst-addr-ipv6 ::/0
```

```
        set protocol udp
        set src-l4port 0-0
        set dst-l4port 500-500
        set action forward
        set forward-slot master
        set priority 5
        set comment "ipv6 ike"
    next
    edit 19
        set status enable
        set vlan 0
        set ether-type ipv6
        set src-addr-ipv6 ::/0
        set dst-addr-ipv6 ::/0
        set protocol udp
        set src-l4port 0-0
        set dst-l4port 4500-4500
        set action forward
        set forward-slot master
        set priority 5
        set comment "ipv6 ike-natt dst"
    next
    edit 20
        set status enable
        set vlan 0
        set ether-type ipv6
        set src-addr-ipv6 ::/0
        set dst-addr-ipv6 ::/0
        set protocol esp
        set action forward
        set forward-slot master
        set priority 5
        set comment "ipv6 esp"
    next
    edit 21
        set status enable
        set vlan 0
        set ether-type ipv4
        set src-addr-ipv4 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0
        set dst-addr-ipv4 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0
        set protocol udp
        set src-l4port 0-0
        set dst-l4port 500-500
        set action forward
        set forward-slot master
        set priority 5
        set comment "ipv4 ike"
    next
    edit 22
        set status enable
        set vlan 0
        set ether-type ipv4
        set src-addr-ipv4 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0
        set dst-addr-ipv4 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0
        set protocol udp
        set src-l4port 0-0
```

```

        set dst-l4port 4500-4500
        set action forward
        set forward-slot master
        set priority 5
        set comment "ipv4 ike-natt dst"
    next
edit 23
    set status enable
    set vlan 0
    set ether-type ipv4
    set src-addr-ipv4 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0
    set dst-addr-ipv4 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0
    set protocol esp
    set action forward
    set forward-slot master
    set priority 5
    set comment "ipv4 esp"
next

```

Troubleshooting

Use the following commands to verify that IPsec VPN sessions are up and running.

Use the `diagnose load-balance status` command from the primary FIM interface module to determine the primary FPM. For FortiGate-7000 HA, run this command from the primary FortiGate-7000. The third line of the command output shows which FPM is operating as the primary FPM.

```

diagnose load-balance status
FIM01: FIM04E3E16000074
Master FPM Blade: slot-4

Slot 3: FPM20E3E17900113
  Status:Working  Function:Active
  Link:          Base: Up          Fabric: Up
  Heartbeat: Management: Good    Data: Good
  Status Message:"Running"
Slot 4: FPM20E3E16800033
  Status:Working  Function:Active
  Link:          Base: Up          Fabric: Up
  Heartbeat: Management: Good    Data: Good
  Status Message:"Running"

FIM02: FIM10E3E16000040
Master FPM Blade: slot-4

Slot 3: FPM20E3E17900113
  Status:Working  Function:Active
  Link:          Base: Up          Fabric: Up
  Heartbeat: Management: Good    Data: Good
  Status Message:"Running"
Slot 4: FPM20E3E16800033
  Status:Working  Function:Active

```



```

Link:      Base: Up      Fabric: Up
Heartbeat: Management: Good  Data: Good
Status Message: "Running"

```

Log into the primary FPM CLI and from here log into the VDOM that you added the tunnel configuration to and run the command `diagnose vpn tunnel list <phase2-name>` to show the sessions for the phase 2 configuration. The example below is for the `to-fgt2` phase 2 configuration configured previously in this chapter. The command output shows the security association (SA) setup for this phase 2 and the all of the destination subnets .

From the command output, make sure the SA is installed and the `dst` addresses are correct.

```

CH15 [FPM04] (002ipsecvpn) # diagnose vpn tunnel list name to-fgt2
list ipsec tunnel by names in vd 11
-----
name=to-fgt2 ver=1 serial=2 4.2.0.1:0->4.2.0.2:0
bound_if=199 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/40 options[0028]=npu ike_assit
proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=8581 ilast=0 olast=0 auto-discovery=0
ike_asssit_last_sent=4318202512
stat: rxp=142020528 txp=147843214 rxb=16537003048 txb=11392723577
dpd: mode=on-demand on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=2
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=to-fgt2 proto=0 sa=1 ref=8560 serial=8
  src: 0:4.2.1.0/255.255.255.0:0 0:4.2.2.0/255.255.255.0:0
  dst: 0:4.2.3.0/255.255.255.0:0 0:4.2.4.0/255.255.255.0:0 0:4.2.5.0/255.255.255.0:0
  SA: ref=7 options=22e type=00 soft=0 mtu=9134 expire=42819/0B replaywin=2048 seqno=4a26f
esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00045e80
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=43148/43200
  dec: spi=e89caf36 esp=aes key=16 26aa75c19207d423d14fd6fef2de3bcf
    ah=sha1 key=20 7d1a330af33fa914c45b80c1c96eafaf2d263ce7
  enc: spi=b721b907 esp=aes key=16 acb75d21c74eabc58f52ba96ee95587f
    ah=sha1 key=20 41120083d27eb1d3c5c5e464d0a36f27b78a0f5a
  dec:pkts/bytes=286338/40910978, enc:pkts/bytes=562327/62082855
  npu_flag=03 npu_rgw=4.2.0.2 npu_lgwy=4.2.0.1 npu_selid=b dec_npuid=3 enc_npuid=1

```

Log into the CLI of any of the FIMs and run the command `diagnose test application fctrlproxyd 2`. The output should show matching destination subnets.

```
diagnose test application fctrlproxyd 2
```

```
fcp route dump : last_update_time 24107
```

```
Slot:4
```

```

routecache entry: (5)
checksum:27 AE 00 EA 10 8D 22 0C D6 48 AB 2E 7E 83 9D 24
vd:3 p1:to-fgt2 p2:to-fgt2 subnet:4.2.3.0 mask:255.255.255.0 enable:1
vd:3 p1:to-fgt2 p2:to-fgt2 subnet:4.2.4.0 mask:255.255.255.0 enable:1
vd:3 p1:to-fgt2 p2:to-fgt2 subnet:4.2.5.0 mask:255.255.255.0 enable:1
=====

```

FortiGate-7000 high availability

FortiGate-7000 for FortiOS 6.0 supports the following types of HA operation:

- FortiGate Clustering protocol (FGCP)
- FortiGate Session Life Support Protocol (FGSP) ([FortiGate-7000 FGSP on page 120](#))
- Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol (VRRP) ([FortiGate-7000 VRRP HA on page 126](#))

New HA features and changes

New HA features and changes for FortiOS 6.0.9:

- HA heartbeat VLAN double-tagging, see [HA heartbeat VLAN double-tagging on page 92](#),
- New protocol for handling HA chassis ID conflicts, see [Introduction to FortiGate-7000 FGCP HA on page 86](#).

New HA features and changes for FortiOS 6.0.6:

- Configuration synchronization, see [Standalone configuration synchronization on page 125](#).
- HA `route_ttl` support, see [Changing how long routes stay in a cluster unit routing table on page 108](#).

New HA features and changes for FortOS 6.0.4:

- FortiGate Session Life Support Protocol (FGSP) (also called standalone session sync) is supported. See [FortiGate-7000 FGSP on page 120](#).
- The following HA session synchronization options are now supported for FGCP HA:

```
config system ha
    set session-pickup {disable | enable}
    set session-pickup-connectionless {disable | enable}
    set session-pickup-delay {disable | enable}
    set inter-cluster-session-sync {disable | enable}
end
```

- The following HA session synchronization options are now supported for FGSP HA:

```
config system ha
    set session-pickup {disable | enable}
    set session-pickup-connectionless {disable | enable}
    set session-pickup-expectation {disable | enable}
    set session-pickup-nat {disable | enable}
end
```

- If both FortiGate-7000s in a cluster are configured with the same chassis ID, the device with the lowest serial number will be shut down.

Introduction to FortiGate-7000 FGCP HA

FortiGate-7000 supports active-passive FortiGate Clustering Protocol (FGCP) HA between two (and only two) identical FortiGate-7000s. You can configure FortiGate-7000 HA in much the same way as any FortiGate HA setup except that

only active-passive HA is supported, and even though FortiGate-7000s are configured with VDOMS, virtual clustering is not supported.

You must use the 10Gbit M1 and M2 interfaces for HA heartbeat communication. See [Connect the M1 and M2 interfaces for HA heartbeat communication on page 90](#). Heartbeat packets are VLAN-tagged and you can configure the VLANs used. You must configure the switch interfaces used to connect the M1 and M2 interfaces in trunk mode and the switches must allow the VLAN-tagged packets.

As part of the FortiGate-7000 HA configuration, you assign each of the FortiGate-7000s in the HA cluster a chassis ID of 1 or 2. The chassis IDs just allow you to identify individual FortiGate-7000s and do not influence primary unit selection.

If both FortiGate-7000s in a cluster are configured with the same chassis ID, both chassis begin operating in HA mode without forming a cluster. A message similar to the following is displayed on the CLI console of both devices:

```
HA cannot be formed because this box's chassis-id 1 is the same from the  
HA peer 'F76E9D3E17000001' chassis-id 1.
```

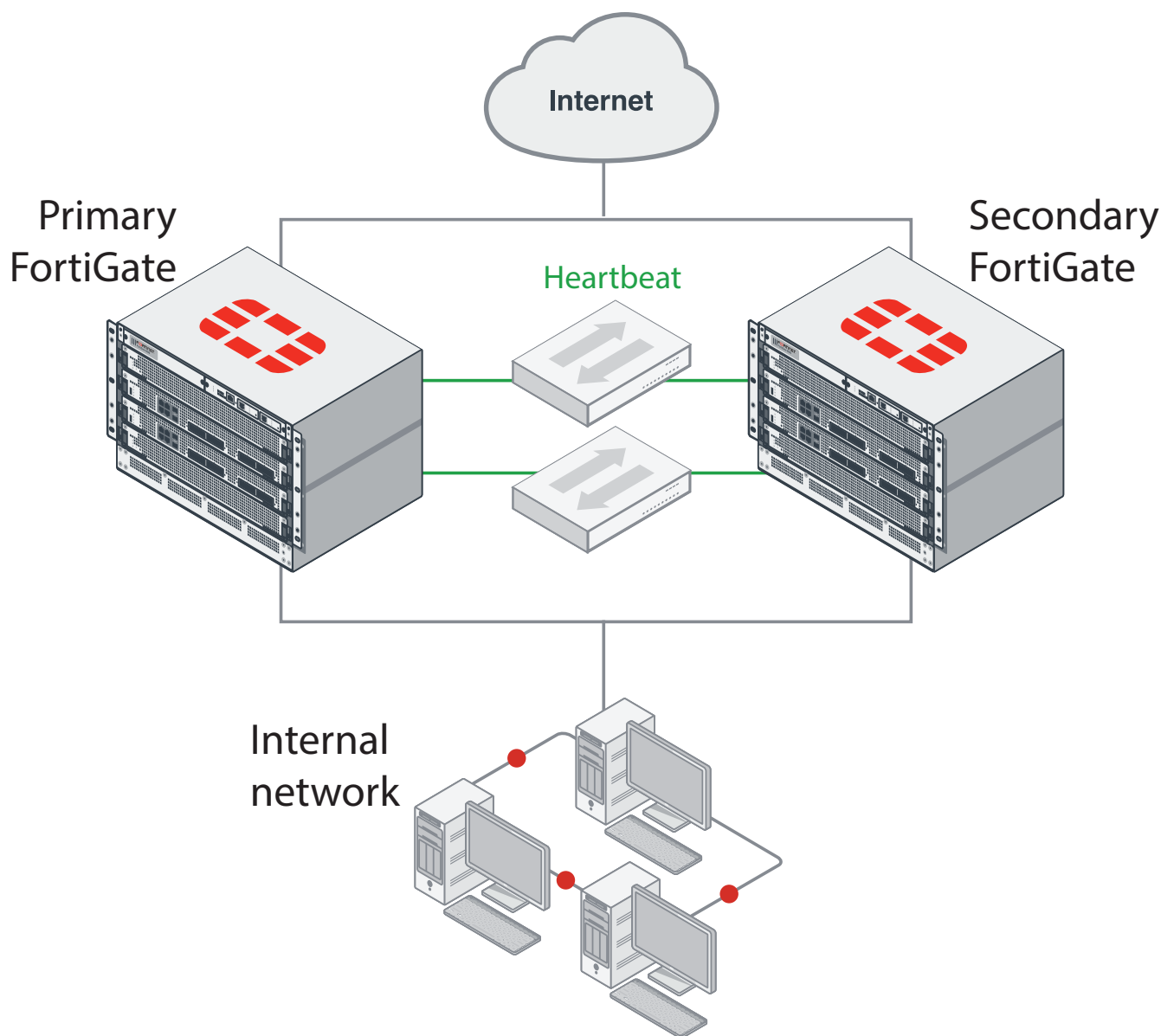


As well, a log message similar to the following is created:

```
Jan 29 16:29:46 10.160.45.70 date=2020-01-29 time=16:29:51 devname="CH-  
02" devid="F76E9D3E17000001" slot=1 logid="0108037904" type="event"  
subtype="ha" level="error" vd="mgmt-vdom" eventtime=1580344192162305962  
tz="-0800" logdesc="Device set as HA master" msg="HA group detected  
chassis-id conflict" ha_group=7 sn="F76E9DT018900001 chassis-id=1"
```

You can resolve this issue by logging into one of the FortiGates and changing its Chassis ID to 2. When this happens, the two chassis will form a cluster.

Example FortiGate-7040 HA configuration



In a FortiGate-7000 FGCP HA configuration, the primary (or master) FortiGate-7000 processes all traffic. The secondary FortiGate-7000 operates in hot standby mode. The FGCP synchronizes the configuration, active sessions, routing information, and so on to the secondary FortiGate-7000. If the primary FortiGate-7000 fails, traffic automatically fails over to the secondary.

Before you begin configuring HA

Before you begin:

- The FortiGate-7000s should be running the same FortiOS firmware version.
- Interfaces should be configured with static IP addresses (not DHCP or PPPoE).

- Register and apply licenses to each FortiGate-7000 before setting up the HA cluster. This includes licensing for FortiCare, IPS, AntiVirus, Web Filtering, Mobile Malware, FortiClient, FortiCloud, and additional virtual domains (VDOMs).
- Both FortiGate-7000s in the cluster must have the same level of licensing for FortiGuard, FortiCloud, FortiClient, and VDOMs.
- FortiToken licenses can be added at any time because they are synchronized to all cluster members.

Configure split ports

If required, you should configure split ports on the FIMs on both FortiGate-7000s before configuring HA because the FortiGate-7000 has to reboot if you enable, change, or disable the split port configuration.

For example, to split the C1, C2, and C4 interfaces of an FIM-7910E in slot 1, enter the following command:

```
config system global
    set split-port 1-C1 2-C1 2-C4
end
```

After configuring split ports, the FortiGate-7000 reboots and synchronizes the configuration.

On each FortiGate-7000, make sure configurations of the FIMs and FPMs are synchronized before starting to configure HA. You can use the following command to verify the synchronization status of all modules:

```
diagnose sys confsync showchsum | grep all
all: c0 68 d2 67 e1 23 d9 3a 10 50 45 c5 50 f1 e6 8e
all: c0 68 d2 67 e1 23 d9 3a 10 50 45 c5 50 f1 e6 8e
all: c0 68 d2 67 e1 23 d9 3a 10 50 45 c5 50 f1 e6 8e
all: c0 68 d2 67 e1 23 d9 3a 10 50 45 c5 50 f1 e6 8e
all: c0 68 d2 67 e1 23 d9 3a 10 50 45 c5 50 f1 e6 8e
all: c0 68 d2 67 e1 23 d9 3a 10 50 45 c5 50 f1 e6 8e
all: c0 68 d2 67 e1 23 d9 3a 10 50 45 c5 50 f1 e6 8e
all: c0 68 d2 67 e1 23 d9 3a 10 50 45 c5 50 f1 e6 8e
```

If the FIMs and FPMs are synchronized, the checksums displayed should all be the same.

You can also use the following command to list the FIMs and FPMs that are synchronized. The example output shows all four modules in a FortiGate-7040E have been configured for HA and added to the cluster.

```
diagnose sys confsync status | grep in_sync
FIM10E3E16000062, Slave, uptime=58852.50, priority=2, slot_id=2:2, idx=3, flag=0x10, in_sync=1
FIM04E3E16000010, Slave, uptime=58726.83, priority=3, slot_id=1:1, idx=0, flag=0x10, in_sync=1
FIM04E3E16000014, Master, uptime=58895.30, priority=1, slot_id=2:1, idx=1, flag=0x10, in_sync=1
FIM10E3E16000040, Slave, uptime=58857.80, priority=4, slot_id=1:2, idx=2, flag=0x10, in_sync=1
FPM20E3E16900234, Slave, uptime=58895.00, priority=16, slot_id=2:3, idx=4, flag=0x64, in_sync=1
FPM20E3E16900269, Slave, uptime=58333.37, priority=120, slot_id=2:4, idx=5, flag=0x64, in_sync=1
FPM20E3E17900113, Slave, uptime=58858.90, priority=116, slot_id=1:3, idx=6, flag=0x64, in_sync=1
FPM20E3E17900217, Slave, uptime=58858.93, priority=117, slot_id=1:4, idx=7, flag=0x64, in_sync=1
...
```

In this command output, `in_sync=1` means the module is synchronized with the primary FIM and `in_sync=0` means the module is not synchronized.

Connect the M1 and M2 interfaces for HA heartbeat communication

HA heartbeat communication between FortiGate-7000s happens over the 10Gbit M1 and M2 interfaces of the FIMs in each chassis. To set up HA heartbeat connections:

- Connect the M1 interfaces of all FIMs together using a switch.
- Connect the M2 interfaces of all FIMs together using another switch.

All of the M1 interfaces must be connected together with a switch and all of the M2 interfaces must be connected together with another switch. Connecting M1 interfaces or M2 interfaces directly is not supported as each FIM needs to communicate with all other FIMs.

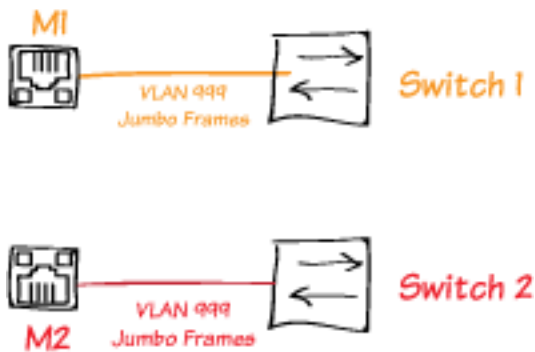
Because the FortiGate-7030E only has one FIM, in a FortiGate-7030E HA cluster you can directly connect the M1 and M2 interfaces of each FortiGate-7030E together, without using a switch.

For redundancy, for other FortiGate-7000s, Fortinet recommends using separate switches for the M1 and M2 connections. These switches should be dedicated to HA heartbeat communication and not used for other traffic. You must also configure switches used for HA heartbeat traffic in trunk mode.

If you use the same switch for the M1 and M2 interfaces, separate the M1 and M2 traffic on the switch and set the heartbeat traffic on the M1 and M2 interfaces to have different VLAN IDs.



Connect the M1 and M2 interfaces before enabling HA. Enabling HA moves heartbeat communication between the FIMs in the same chassis to the M1 and M2 interfaces. So if these interfaces are not connected before you enable HA, FIMs in the same chassis will not be able to communicate with each other.



Default HA heartbeat VLAN triple-tagging

By default, HA heartbeat packets are VLAN packets with VLAN ID 999, an outer TPID of 0x8100, an ethertype of 8890, and an MTU value of 1500. The default proprietary HA heartbeat VLAN tagging uses the following triple tagging format:

```
TPID 0x8100 VLAN <vlan-id> (by default 999) + TPID 0x88a8 VLAN 10/30 + TPID 0x8100 VLAN 10/30 + ethernet packet
```

If your switch is compatible with Fortinet's proprietary triple-tagging format then all you need to do is use the following options to give the M1 and M2 interfaces different VLAN tags.

```
config system ha
  set ha-port-dtag-mode proprietary
  set hbdev-vlan-id <vlan>
```

```
set hbdev-second-vlan-id <vlan>
end
```

Where:

- `ha-port-dtag-mode` is set to `proprietary` and the FortiGate-7000 uses the default triple-tagging format.
- `hbdev-vlan-id` sets the outer VLAN ID used by M1 interface heartbeat packets.
- `hbdev-second-vlan-id` sets the outer VLAN ID used by M2 interface heartbeat packets. The M1 and M2 interfaces must have different outer VLAN IDs if they are connected to the same switch.

If your switch is not compatible with Fortinet's proprietary triple-tagging format, you can use the following options to change the outer TPID and ethertype.

```
config system ha
set ha-port-dtag-mode proprietary
set ha-port-outer-tpid {0x8100 | 0x88a8 | 0x9100}
set ha-eth-type <ethertype>
end
```

Where:

- `ha-port-dtag-mode` is set to `proprietary` and the FortiGate-7000 uses the default triple-tagging format.
- `ha-port-outer-tpid` sets the outer TPID to be compatible with the switch. The default outer TPID of `0x8100`, is compatible with most third-party switches.
- `ha-eth-type` sets the HA heartbeat packet ethertype (default 8890) to be compatible with the switch.



If your switch doesn't support triple tagging, see [HA heartbeat VLAN double-tagging on page 92](#).

Example triple-tagging compatible switch configuration

The switch that you use for connecting HA heartbeat interfaces does not have to support IEEE 802.1ad (also known as Q-in-Q, double-tagging), but the switch should be able to forward the double-tagged frames. Fortinet recommends avoiding switches that strip out the inner tag. FortiSwitch D and E series can correctly forward double-tagged frames.



This configuration is not required for FortiGate-7030E HA configurations if you have set up direct connections between the HA heartbeat interfaces.

This example shows how to configure a FortiGate-7000 to use different VLAN IDs for the M1 and M2 HA heartbeat interfaces and then how to configure two ports on a Cisco switch to allow HA heartbeat packets.



This example sets the native VLAN ID for both switch ports to 777. You can use any VLAN ID as the native VLAN ID as long as the native VLAN ID is not the same as the allowed VLAN ID.

1. On both FortiGate-7000s in the HA configuration, enter the following command to use different VLAN IDs for the M1 and M2 interfaces. The command sets the M1 VLAN ID to 4086 and the M2 VLAN ID to 4087:

```
config system ha
set ha-port-dtag-mode proprietary
```

```

set hbdev "1-M1" 50 "2-M1" 50 "1-M2" 50 "2-M2" 50
set hbdev-vlan-id 4086
set hbdev-second-vlan-id 4087
end

```

2. Use the `get system ha` or `get system ha status` command to confirm the VLAN IDs.

```

get system ha status
...
HBDEV stats:
FG74E83E16000015(updated 1 seconds ago):
  1-M1: physical/10000full, up, rx-bytes/packets/dropped/errors=579602089/2290683/0/0,
tx=215982465/761929/0/0, vlan-id=4086
  2-M1: physical/10000full, up, rx-bytes/packets/dropped/errors=577890866/2285570/0/0,
tx=215966839/761871/0/0, vlan-id=4086
  1-M2: physical/10000full, up, rx-bytes/packets/dropped/errors=579601846/2290682/0/0,
tx=215982465/761929/0/0, vlan-id=4087
  2-M2: physical/10000full, up, rx-bytes/packets/dropped/errors=577890651/2285569/0/0,
tx=215966811/761871/0/0, vlan-id=4087
FG74E83E16000016(updated 1 seconds ago):
  1-M1: physical/10000full, up, rx-bytes/packets/dropped/errors=598602425/2290687/0/0,
tx=196974887/761899/0/0, vlan-id=4086
  2-M1: physical/10000full, up, rx-bytes/packets/dropped/errors=596895956/2285588/0/0,
tx=196965052/761864/0/0, vlan-id=4086
  1-M2: physical/10000full, up, rx-bytes/packets/dropped/errors=598602154/2290686/0/0,
tx=196974915/761899/0/0, vlan-id=4087
  2-M2: physical/10000full, up, rx-bytes/packets/dropped/errors=596895685/2285587/0/0,
tx=196965080/761864/0/0, vlan-id=4087
...

```

3. Configure the Cisco switch port that connects the M1 interfaces to allow packets with a VLAN ID of 4086:

```

interface <name>
switchport mode trunk
switchport trunk native vlan 777
switchport trunk allowed vlan 4086

```

4. Configure the Cisco switch port that connects the M2 interfaces to allow packets with a VLAN ID of 4087:

```

interface <name>
switchport mode trunk
switchport trunk native vlan 777
switchport trunk allowed vlan 4087

```

HA heartbeat VLAN double-tagging

FortiGate-7000 HA supports HA heartbeat double-tagging to be compatible with third-party switches that do not support Fortinet's proprietary triple tagging format. HA heartbeat double-tagging has the following format:

TPID 0x8100 VLAN <vlan-id> (by default 999) + TPID 0x8100 VLAN 10/30 + ethernet packet

You can use the following commands to set the HA VLAN tagging mode to double-tagging, customize the outer TPID, and set the VLAN IDs for M1 and M2. Both FortiGates in the cluster must have the same VLAN tagging configuration.

```

config system ha
set ha-port-dtag-mode double-tagging
set ha-port-outer-tpid {0x8100 | 0x88a8 | 0x9100}
set hbdev-vlan-id <vlan>
set hbdev-second-vlan-id <vlan>

```



```
set ha-eth-type <ethertype>
end
```

Where:

`ha-port-dtag-mode` is set to `double-tagging` and the FortiGate-7000 uses the double-tagging format.

`ha-port-outer-tpid` sets the outer TPID to be compatible with the switch. The default outer TPID of 0x8100 is compatible with most third-party switches.

`hbdev-vlan-id` sets the outer VLAN ID used by M1 interface heartbeat packets.

`hbdev-second-vlan-id` sets the outer VLAN ID used by M2 interface heartbeat packets. The M1 and M2 interfaces must have different outer VLAN IDs if they are connected to the same switch.

`ha-eth-type` sets the HA heartbeat packet ethertype (default 8890) to be compatible with the switch.

Example double-tagging switch configuration

The following switch configuration is compatible with FortiGate-7040E HA heartbeat double tagging and with the default TPID of 0x8100.

The FortiGate-7040E HA heartbeat configuration is.

```
config system ha
set ha-port-dtag-mode double-tagging
set hbdev "1-M1" 50 "2-M1" 50 "1-M2" 50 "2-M2" 50
set hbdev-vlan-id 4086
set hbdev-second-vlan-id 4087
end
```

Example third-party switch configuration:

Switch interfaces 37 to 40 connect to the M1 interfaces of the FIMs in both FortiGate-7040E chassis.

```
interface Ethernet37
description **** FGT-7000E M1 HA HB ****
speed forced 10000full
switchport access vlan 660
switchport trunk native vlan 4086
switchport mode dot1q-tunnel
!
interface Ethernet38
description **** FGT-7000E M1 HA HB ****
speed forced 10000full
switchport access vlan 660
switchport trunk native vlan 4086
switchport mode dot1q-tunnel
!
interface Ethernet39
description **** FGT-7000E M1 HA HB ****
speed forced 10000full
switchport access vlan 660
switchport trunk native vlan 4086
switchport mode dot1q-tunnel
!
interface Ethernet40
description **** FGT-7000E M1 HA HB ****
speed forced 10000full
switchport access vlan 660
```

```
switchport trunk native vlan 4086
switchport mode dot1q-tunnel
!
```

Switch interfaces 41 to 44 connect to the M2 interfaces of the FIMs in both FortiGate-7040E chassis.

```
interface Ethernet41
description **** FGT-7000E M2 HA HB ****
mtu 9214
speed forced 10000full
no error-correction encoding
switchport access vlan 770
switchport trunk native vlan 4087
switchport mode dot1q-tunnel
!
interface Ethernet42
description **** FGT-7000E M2 HA HB ****
mtu 9214
speed forced 10000full
no error-correction encoding
switchport access vlan 770
switchport trunk native vlan 4087
switchport mode dot1q-tunnel
!
interface Ethernet43
description **** FGT-7000E M2 HA HB ****
mtu 9214
speed forced 10000full
no error-correction encoding
switchport access vlan 770
switchport trunk native vlan 4087
switchport mode dot1q-tunnel
!
interface Ethernet44
description **** FGT-7000E M2 HA HB ****
mtu 9214
speed forced 10000full
no error-correction encoding
switchport access vlan 770
switchport trunk native vlan 4087
switchport mode dot1q-tunnel
```

Basic FortiGate-7000 HA configuration

Use the following steps to set up HA between two FortiGate-7000s. To configure HA, you assign a chassis ID (1 and 2) to each of the FortiGate-7000s. These IDs allow the FGCP to identify the chassis and do not influence primary FortiGate selection. Before you start, determine which FortiGate-7000 should be chassis 1 and which should be chassis 2.

Make sure you give each FortiGate-7000 a different chassis ID. If both FortiGate-7000s in a cluster are configured with the same chassis ID, both chassis begin operating in HA mode without forming a cluster. A message similar to the following is displayed on the CLI console of both devices:

```
HA cannot be formed because this box's chassis-id 1 is the same from the
HA peer 'F76E9D3E17000001' chassis-id 1.
```



As well, a log message similar to the following is created:

```
Jan 29 16:29:46 10.160.45.70 date=2020-01-29 time=16:29:51 devname="CH-
02" devid="F76E9D3E17000001" slot=1 logid="0108037904" type="event"
subtype="ha" level="error" vd="mgmt-vdom" eventtime=1580344192162305962
tz="-0800" logdesc="Device set as HA master" msg="HA group detected
chassis-id conflict" ha_group=7 sn="F76E9DT018900001 chassis-id=1"
```

You can resolve this issue by logging into one of the FortiGate-7000s and changing its Chassis ID to 2. When this happens, the two chassis will form a cluster.

1. Set up HA heartbeat communication as described in [Connect the M1 and M2 interfaces for HA heartbeat communication on page 90](#).
2. Log into the GUI or CLI of the FIM in slot 1 of the FortiGate-7000 that will become chassis 1. Usually you would do this by connecting the management IP address of this FortiGate-7000.
3. Use the following CLI command to change the host name. This step is optional, but setting a host name makes the FortiGate-7000 easier to identify after the cluster has formed.

```
config system global
  set hostname 7K-Chassis-1
end
```

From the GUI you can configure the host name by going to **System > Settings** and changing the **Host name**.

4. Enter the following command to configure basic HA settings for the chassis 1 FortiGate-7000:

```
config system ha
  set group-id <id>
  set group-name My-7K-Cluster
  set mode a-p
  set hbdev 1-M1 50 1-M2 50 2-M1 50 2-M2 50
  set chassis-id 1
  set hbdev-vlan-id 4086
  set hbdev-second-vlan-id 4087
  set password <password>
end
```

From the GUI you can configure HA by going to **System > HA**. Set the **Mode** to **Active-Passive**, set the **Group Name**, add a **Password**, and set the **Heartbeat Interface Priority** for the heartbeat interfaces (1-M1, 1-M2, 2-M1, and 2-M2). You must configure the chassis ID and group ID from the CLI.

5. Log into the chassis 2 FortiGate-7000 and configure its host name, for example:

```
config system global
  set hostname 7K-Chassis-2
end
```

From the GUI you can configure the host name by going to **System > Settings** and changing the **Host name**.

6. Enter the following command to configure basic HA settings. The configuration must be the same as the chassis 1 configuration, except for the chassis ID.

```
config system ha
  set group-id <id>
```

```

set group-name My-7K-Cluster
set mode a-p
set hbdev 1-M1 50 1-M2 50 2-M1 50 2-M2 50
set chassis-id 2
set hbdev-vlan-id 4086
set hbdev-second-vlan-id 4087
set password <password>
end

```

From the GUI you can configure HA by going to **System > HA**. Set the **Mode** to **Active-Passive**, set the **Group Name**, add a **Password**, and set the **Heartbeat Interface Priority** for the heartbeat interfaces (1-M1, 1-M2, 2-M1, and 2-M2). You must configure the chassis ID and group ID from the CLI.

Once you save your configuration changes, if the HA heartbeat interfaces are connected, the FortiGate-7000s negotiate to establish a cluster. You may temporarily lose connectivity with the FortiGate-7000s as the cluster negotiates and the FGCP changes the MAC addresses of the FortiGate-7000 interfaces. .

7. Log into the cluster and view the HA Status dashboard widget or enter the `get system ha status` command to confirm that the cluster has formed and is operating normally.

If the cluster is operating normally, you can connect network equipment, add your configuration, and start operating the cluster.

Verifying that the cluster is operating normally

You view the cluster status from the HA Status dashboard widget, by going to **System > HA**, or by using the `get system ha status` command.

If the HA Status widget or the `get system ha status` command shows a cluster has not formed, check the HA heartbeat connections. They should be configured as described in [Connect the M1 and M2 interfaces for HA heartbeat communication on page 90](#).

You should also review the HA configurations of the FortiGate-7000s. When checking the configurations, make sure both FortiGate-7000s have the same HA configuration, including identical HA group IDs, group names, passwords, and HA heartbeat VLAN IDs. Also make sure the FortiGate-7000s have different chassis IDs.

The following example FortiGate-7000 `get system ha status` output shows a FortiGate-7000 cluster that is operating normally. The output shows which FortiGate-7000 has become the primary (master) FortiGate-7000 and how it was chosen. You can also see CPU and memory use data, HA heartbeat VLAN IDs, and so on.

```

get system ha status
HA Health Status: OK
Model: FortiGate-7000E
Mode: HA A-P
Group: 7
Debug: 0
Cluster Uptime: 0 days 16:42:5
Cluster state change time: 2019-01-14 16:26:30
Master selected using:
    <2019/01/14 16:26:30> FG74E83E16000016 is selected as the master because it has more
    active switch blade.
    <2019/01/14 16:26:12> FG74E83E16000016 is selected as the master because it's the only
    member in the cluster.
ses_pickup: disable
override: disable
Configuration Status:
    FG74E83E16000016(updated 3 seconds ago): in-sync

```

```

FG74E83E16000016 chksum dump: 7c 74 ce 81 83 c0 54 c1 01 1d 4f a9 c9 fd 17 df
FG74E83E16000015(updated 4 seconds ago): in-sync
FG74E83E16000015 chksum dump: 7c 74 ce 81 83 c0 54 c1 01 1d 4f a9 c9 fd 17 df
System Usage stats:
FG74E83E16000016(updated 4 seconds ago):
  sessions=198, average-cpu-user/nice/system/idle=1%/0%/0%/97%, memory=5%
FG74E83E16000015(updated 0 seconds ago):
  sessions=0, average-cpu-user/nice/system/idle=2%/0%/0%/96%, memory=6%
HBDEV stats:
FG74E83E16000016(updated 4 seconds ago):
  1-M1: physical/10000full, up, rx-bytes/packets/dropped/errors=227791977/902055/0/0,
tx=85589814/300318/0/0, vlan-id=4086
  2-M1: physical/10000full, up, rx-bytes/packets/dropped/errors=227119632/900048/0/0,
tx=85589814/300318/0/0, vlan-id=4086
  1-M2: physical/10000full, up, rx-bytes/packets/dropped/errors=227791977/902055/0/0,
tx=85589814/300318/0/0, vlan-id=4087
  2-M2: physical/10000full, up, rx-bytes/packets/dropped/errors=227119632/900048/0/0,
tx=85589814/300318/0/0, vlan-id=4087
FG74E83E16000015(updated 0 seconds ago):
  1-M1: physical/10000full, up, rx-bytes/packets/dropped/errors=0/0/0/0,
tx=85067/331/0/0, vlan-id=4086
  2-M1: physical/10000full, up, rx-bytes/packets/dropped/errors=947346/3022/0/0,
tx=206768/804/0/0, vlan-id=4086
  1-M2: physical/10000full, up, rx-bytes/packets/dropped/errors=0/0/0/0,
tx=85067/331/0/0, vlan-id=4087
  2-M2: physical/10000full, up, rx-bytes/packets/dropped/errors=946804/3020/0/0,
tx=206768/804/0/0, vlan-id=4087
Master: 7K-Chassis-1      , FG74E83E16000016, cluster index = 0
Slave : 7K-Chassis-2      , FG74E83E16000015, cluster index = 1
number of vcluster: 1
vcluster 1: work 10.101.11.20
Master: FG74E83E16000016, operating cluster index = 0
Slave : FG74E83E16000015, operating cluster index = 1
Chassis Status: (Local chassis ID: 2)
  Chassis ID 1: Slave Chassis
    Slot ID 1: Master Slot
    Slot ID 2: Slave Slot
  Chassis ID 2: Master Chassis
    Slot ID 1: Master Slot
    Slot ID 2: Slave Slot

```

Confirming that the FortiGate-7000 HA cluster is synchronized

After an HA cluster is up and running, you can use the HA Status dashboard widget to view status information about the cluster. You can also use the `get system ha status` command to confirm that the cluster is operating normally. As highlighted below, the command shows the HA health status, describes how the current primary FortiGate-7000 was selected, shows if the configuration is synchronized (configuration status), and indicates the serial numbers of the primary and secondary FortiGate-7000s.

```

get system ha status
HA Health Status: OK
...
Master selected using:

```

```
<2019/09/23 12:56:53> FG74E43E17000073 is selected as the master because it has the
largest value of override priority.
...
```

Configuration Status:

```
FG74E17000073(updated 2 seconds ago): in-sync
FG74E43E17000073 chksum dump: 0b 16 f2 e4 e2 89 eb a1 bf 8f 15 9b e1 4e 3b f2
FG74E43E17000065(updated 4 seconds ago): in-sync
FG74E43E17000065 chksum dump: 0b 16 f2 e4 e2 89 eb a1 bf 8f 15 9b e1 4e 3b f2
...
Master: FG74E43E17000073, operating cluster index = 0
Slave : FG74E43E17000065, operating cluster index = 1
```

For a FortiGate-7000 HA cluster to operate normally, the configurations of both FortiGate-7000s and the FIMs and FPMs in these devices must be synchronized. The Configuration Status information provided by the `get system ha status` command is a useful indicator of synchronization status of the cluster. The information provided indicates whether the FortiGate-7000s in the cluster are `in-sync` (or `out-of-sync`) and includes checksums of each FortiGate-7000 configuration. If the two FortiGate-7000s are synchronized, these checksums must match.

Viewing more details about HA cluster synchronization

You can use the `diagnose sys ha checksum show` command to display the debugzone and configuration checksums for the FortiGate-7000 in the cluster that you have logged in to.

```
diagnose sys ha checksum show
is_manage_master()=1, is_root_master()=1
debugzone
global: 7e 06 79 02 65 a9 ea e3 68 58 73 c2 33 d0 16 f1
root: 43 2c ee 2c f1 b3 b2 13 ff 37 34 5e 86 11 dc bf
mgmt-vdom: 9c 7d 58 9f 81 4b b7 4e ed 2a c3 02 34 b4 7c 63
all: 0b 16 f2 e4 e2 89 eb a1 bf 8f 15 9b e1 4e 3b f2

checksum
global: 7e 06 79 02 65 a9 ea e3 68 58 73 c2 33 d0 16 f1
root: 43 2c ee 2c f1 b3 b2 13 ff 37 34 5e 86 11 dc bf
mgmt-vdom: 9c 7d 58 9f 81 4b b7 4e ed 2a c3 02 34 b4 7c 63
all: 0b 16 f2 e4 e2 89 eb a1 bf 8f 15 9b e1 4e 3b f2
```

The first line of this example output indicates that the command is displaying information for the primary FortiGate-7000. This command output then shows debugzone and checksum information for the primary FIM. You can verify that the primary FIM is synchronized because both sets of checksums match.

Each set of checksums includes a checksum for the global configuration, for each VDOM (in this case there are two VDOMs: root and mgmt-vdom), and a checksum for the complete configuration (all).

You can use the `diagnose sys ha checksum cluster` command to display the debugzone and configuration checksums for both FortiGate-7000s in the cluster. The command output also indicates which FortiGate-7000 is the primary (`is_manage_master()=1`) and the secondary (`is_manage_master()=0`). If the cluster is synchronized, both FortiGate-7000s will have the same checksums.

```
diagnose sys ha checksum cluster

===== FG74E43E17000073 =====

is_manage_master()=1, is_root_master()=1
```

```
debugzone
global: 7e 06 79 02 65 a9 ea e3 68 58 73 c2 33 d0 16 f1
root: 43 2c ee 2c f1 b3 b2 13 ff 37 34 5e 86 11 dc bf
mgmt-vdom: 9c 7d 58 9f 81 4b b7 4e ed 2a c3 02 34 b4 7c 63
all: 0b 16 f2 e4 e2 89 eb a1 bf 8f 15 9b e1 4e 3b f2
```

```
checksum
global: 7e 06 79 02 65 a9 ea e3 68 58 73 c2 33 d0 16 f1
root: 43 2c ee 2c f1 b3 b2 13 ff 37 34 5e 86 11 dc bf
mgmt-vdom: 9c 7d 58 9f 81 4b b7 4e ed 2a c3 02 34 b4 7c 63
all: 0b 16 f2 e4 e2 89 eb a1 bf 8f 15 9b e1 4e 3b f2
```

```
===== FG74E43E17000065 =====
```

```
is_manage_master()=0, is_root_master()=0
debugzone
global: 7e 06 79 02 65 a9 ea e3 68 58 73 c2 33 d0 16 f1
root: 43 2c ee 2c f1 b3 b2 13 ff 37 34 5e 86 11 dc bf
mgmt-vdom: 9c 7d 58 9f 81 4b b7 4e ed 2a c3 02 34 b4 7c 63
all: 0b 16 f2 e4 e2 89 eb a1 bf 8f 15 9b e1 4e 3b f2
```

```
checksum
global: 7e 06 79 02 65 a9 ea e3 68 58 73 c2 33 d0 16 f1
root: 43 2c ee 2c f1 b3 b2 13 ff 37 34 5e 86 11 dc bf
mgmt-vdom: 9c 7d 58 9f 81 4b b7 4e ed 2a c3 02 34 b4 7c 63
all: 0b 16 f2 e4 e2 89 eb a1 bf 8f 15 9b e1 4e 3b f2
```

Finally, you can also log into the CLI of each FortiGate-7000 in the cluster and use the `diagnose sys confsync showcsum` command to confirm that the configurations of the FIMs and FPMs in each FortiGate-7000 are synchronized.

The output of the command will also show that the ha checksums are the same for both FortiGate-7000s, but the confsync checksums are different. This occurs because some parts of the configuration are not synchronized by HA so each FortiGate-7000 will have a different configuration and different confsync checksums.

See [Viewing more details about FortiGate-7000 synchronization on page 44](#) for details about the `diagnose sys confsync showcsum` command.

Setting up HA management connections

Fortinet recommends the following configurations for redundant management connections to a FortiGate-7000 HA configuration.

- Single management connections to each of the FIMs.
- Redundant management connections to each of the FIMs.

These management connections involve connecting the static redundant management interfaces (MGMT1 to MGMT4) of each FIM in the HA configuration to one or more switches. You do not have to change the FortiGate-7000 configuration to set up redundant management connections. However, specific switch configurations are required for each of these configurations as described below.



LACP is not supported for the mgmt aggregate interface.

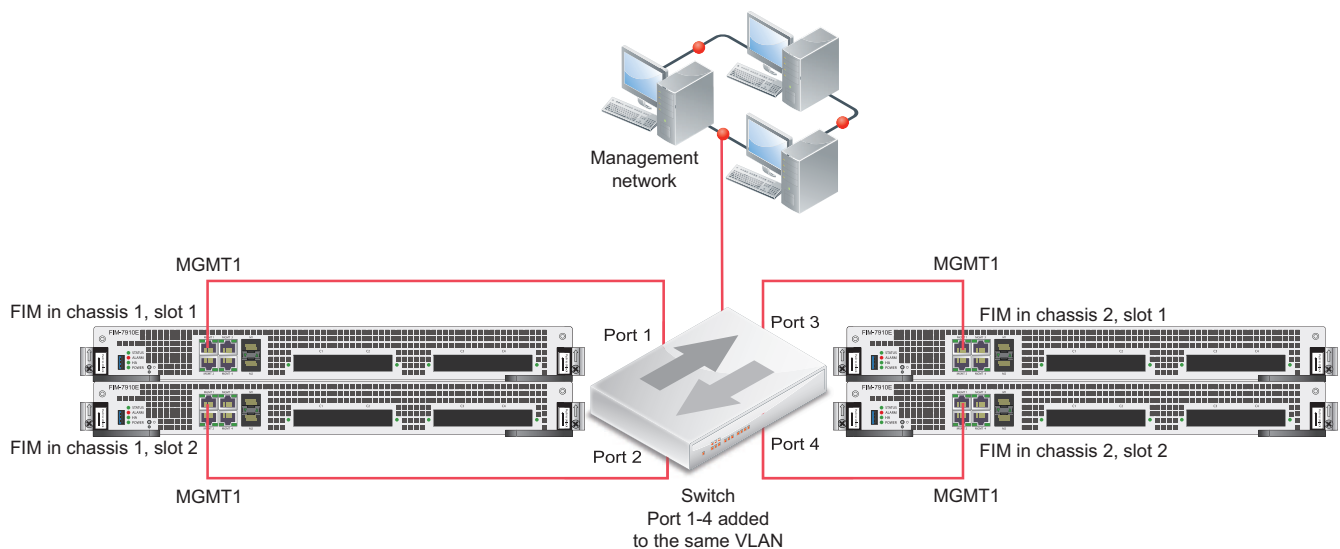
Setting up single management connections to each of the FIMs

The simplest way to provide redundant management connections to a FortiGate-7000 HA configuration involves connecting the MGMT1 interface of each of the FIMs to four ports on a switch. On the switch you must add the four switch ports to the same VLAN. Then connect the switch to your management network and allow traffic from the VLAN to the management network.



A FortiGate-7030E HA configuration only has two FIMs so would only require two switch ports.

Example FortiGate-7000 HA redundant management connections



Setting up redundant management connections to each of the FIMs

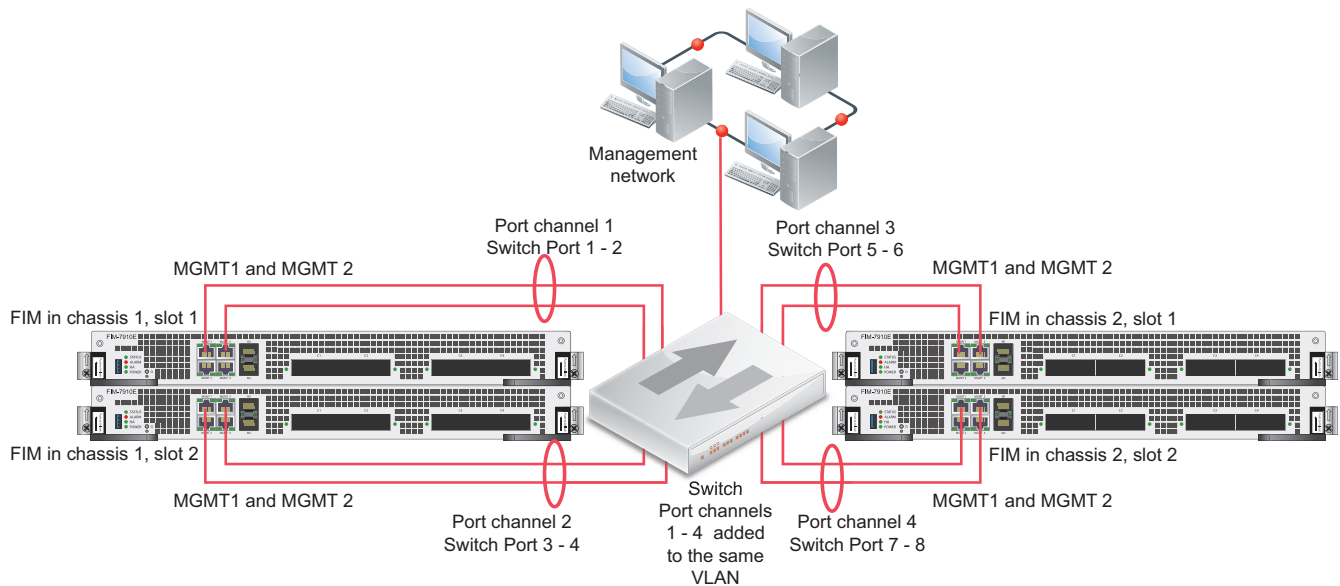
You can enhance redundancy by setting up two redundant management connections to each FIM. To support this configuration, on the switch you must create a port channel for each FIM interface. Create a total of four port channels, one for each FIM and add each of the port channels to the same VLAN. Then connect the switch to your management network and allow traffic from the VLAN to the management network.

If you use two switches, the VLAN should span across both switches.



A FortiGate-7030E HA configuration only has two FIMs so would only require two port channels.

Example FortiGate-7000 HA redundant management connections with redundant connections to each FIM



Primary FortiGate-7000 selection with override disabled (default)

FortiGate-7000 FGCP selects the primary FortiGate-7000 based on [standard FGCP primary unit selection](#) and also accounting for the number of failed FPMs. The selection sequence is:

- At least one active FPM
- Failed FIMs
- Failed monitored interfaces
- Failed FPMs
- Age
- Device priority
- Serial number

In most cases and with default settings, if everything is connected and operating normally, the FortiGate-7000 with the highest serial number becomes the primary FortiGate-7000. You can set the device priority higher on one of the FortiGate-7000s if you want it to become the primary FortiGate-7000.

The selection sequence also shows that at least one FPM must be active for a FortiGate-7000 to be selected to be the primary. If at least one FPM is active on each FortiGate-7000, the most important criteria is the number of operating FIMs, followed by the number of connected monitored interfaces, and followed by the number of failed FPMs. So if one or more FPMs fail, if both FIMs are operating and if monitored interfaces are not configured or no monitored interface has become disconnected, the primary FortiGate-7000 will be the one with the most active FPMs.

Primary FortiGate-7000 selection with override enabled

With override enabled, FortiGate-7000 FGCP selects the primary FortiGate-7000 based on [standard FGCP primary unit selection with override enabled](#) and also accounting for the number of failed FIMs and FPMs. The selection sequence is:

- At least one active FPM
- Failed FIMs
- Failed monitored interfaces
- Failed FPMs
- Device priority
- Age
- Serial number

Enabling override and adjusting the device priority means that the FortiGate-7000 with the highest device priority becomes the primary FortiGate-7000 as long as both FIMs are operating, monitored interfaces are not configured, no monitored interface has become disconnected, and both FortiGate-7000s have the same number of failed FPMs. Enabling override causes the cluster to negotiate more often to make sure that the FortiGate-7000 with the highest device priority always becomes the primary FortiGate-7000.

Failover protection

FortiGate-7000 HA supports failover protection to provide FortiOS services even when one of the FortiGate-7000s encounters a problem that would result in partial or complete loss of connectivity or reduced performance for a standalone FortiGate-7000. This failover protection provides a backup mechanism that can be used to reduce the risk of unexpected downtime, especially in a mission-critical environment.

To achieve failover protection in a FortiGate-7000 cluster, one of the FortiGate-7000s functions as the primary, processing traffic and the other as the secondary, operating in an active stand-by mode. The cluster IP addresses and HA virtual MAC addresses are associated with the interfaces of the primary. All traffic directed at the cluster is actually sent to and processed by the primary.

While the cluster is functioning, the primary FortiGate-7000 functions as the FortiGate network security device for the networks that it is connected to. In addition, the primary FortiGate-7000 and the secondary FortiGate-7000 use the HA heartbeat to keep in constant communication. The secondary FortiGate-7000 reports its status to the primary FortiGate-7000 and receives and stores connection and state table updates from the primary FortiGate-7000.

FortiGate-7000 HA supports four kinds of failover protection:

- Device failure protection automatically replaces a failed device and restarts traffic flow with minimal impact on the network.
- FIM failure protection makes sure that traffic is processed by the FortiGate-7000 with the most operating FIMs.
- Link failure protection maintains traffic flow if a link fails.
- FPM failure protection makes sure that traffic is processed by the FortiGate-7000 with the most operating FPMs.
- Session failure protection resumes communication sessions with minimal loss of data if a device, module, or link failure occurs.

Device failure

If the primary FortiGate-7000 encounters a problem that is severe enough to cause it to fail, the secondary FortiGate-7000 becomes new primary FortiGate-7000. This occurs because the secondary FortiGate-7000 is constantly waiting to negotiate to become primary FortiGate-7000. Only the heartbeat packets sent by the primary FortiGate-7000 keep the secondary FortiGate-7000 from becoming the primary FortiGate-7000. Each received heartbeat packet resets a negotiation timer in the secondary FortiGate-7000. If this timer is allowed to run out because the secondary FortiGate-7000 does not receive heartbeat packets from the primary FortiGate-7000, the secondary FortiGate-7000 assumes that the primary FortiGate-7000 has failed and becomes the primary FortiGate-7000.

The new primary FortiGate-7000 will have the same MAC and IP addresses as the former primary FortiGate-7000. The new primary FortiGate-7000 then sends gratuitous ARP packets out all of its connected interfaces to inform attached switches to send traffic to the new primary FortiGate-7000. Sessions then resume with the new primary FortiGate-7000.

FIM failure

If one or more FIMs in the primary FortiGate-7000 fails, the cluster renegotiates and the FortiGate-7000 with the most operating FIMs becomes the primary FortiGate-7000. An FIM failure can occur if the FIM shuts down due to a software crash or hardware problem, or if the FIM is manually shut down or even removed from the chassis.

After the primary FortiGate-7000 experiences an FIM failure, the FortiGate-7000 with the most operating FIMs becomes the new primary FortiGate-7000. The new primary FortiGate-7000 sends gratuitous arp packets out all of its connected interfaces to inform attached switches to send traffic to it. Sessions then resume with the new primary FortiGate-7000.

If the secondary FortiGate-7000 experiences an FIM failure, its status in the cluster does not change. However, in future negotiations the FortiGate-7000 with an FIM failure is less likely to become the primary FortiGate-7000.

Link failure

If your HA configuration includes HA interface monitoring, if a primary FortiGate-7000 interface fails or is disconnected while a cluster is operating, a link failure occurs. When a link failure occurs, the FortiGate-7000s in the cluster negotiate to select a new primary FortiGate-7000. The link failure means that a that primary FortiGate-7000 with the most link failures will become the secondary and the FortiGate-7000 with the fewest link failures becomes the primary FortiGate-7000.

Just as for a device failover, the new primary FortiGate-7000 sends gratuitous arp packets out all of its connected interfaces to inform attached switches to send traffic to it. Sessions then resume with the new primary FortiGate-7000.

If the secondary FortiGate-7000 experiences a link failure, its status in the cluster does not change. However, in future negotiations a FortiGate-7000 with a link failure is less likely to become the primary FortiGate-7000.

If one of the FortiGate-7000s experiences an FIM or FPM failure and the other experiences a link failure, the FortiGate-7000 with the most operating FIMs or FPMs becomes the primary FortiGate-7000, even if it is also experiencing a link failure.

FPM failure

If one or more FPMs in the primary FortiGate-7000 fails, the cluster renegotiates and the FortiGate-7000 with the most operating FPMs becomes the primary FortiGate-7000. An FPM failure can occur if the FPM shuts down due to a software crash or hardware problem, or if the FPM is manually shut down or even removed from the chassis.

After the primary FortiGate-7000 experiences an FIM failure, the FortiGate-7000 with the most operating FPMs becomes the new primary FortiGate-7000. The new primary FortiGate-7000 sends gratuitous arp packets out all of its connected interfaces to inform attached switches to send traffic to it. Sessions then resume with the new primary FortiGate-7000.

If the secondary FortiGate-7000 experiences an FPM failure, its status in the cluster does not change. However, in future negotiations the FortiGate-7000 with an FPM failure is less likely to become the primary FortiGate-7000.

Session failover

FortiGate-7000 session synchronization involves the primary FortiGate-7000 informing the secondary FortiGate-7000 of changes to the primary FortiGate-7000 connection and state tables, keeping the secondary FortiGate-7000 up-to-date with the traffic currently being processed by the cluster.

Session synchronization traffic uses the M1 and M2 interfaces. FortiGate-7000 does not support using the `session-sync-dev` option to use data interfaces for session synchronization. The M1 and M2 interfaces provide enough bandwidth for both HA heartbeat and session synchronization traffic, so additional session synchronization devices are not required. As well, keeping session synchronization traffic on the M1 and M2 interfaces separates session synchronization traffic from data traffic.

After an HA failover, because of session synchronization the new primary FortiGate-7000 recognizes open sessions that were being handled by the cluster. The sessions continue to be processed by the new primary FortiGate-7000 and are handled according to their last known state.

Primary FortiGate-7000 recovery

If a primary FortiGate-7000 recovers after a device, FIM, link, or FPM failure, it will operate as the secondary FortiGate-7000. If `override` is enabled; however, when the FortiGate-7000 recovers, the cluster will renegotiate and the FortiGate-7000 with the highest device priority becomes the primary FortiGate-7000.

HA cluster firmware upgrades

All of the FIMs and FPMs in a FortiGate-7000 HA cluster run the same firmware image. You upgrade the firmware from the primary FIM in the primary FortiGate-7000 .

If `uninterruptible-upgrade` and `session-pickup` are enabled, firmware upgrades should only cause a minimal traffic interruption. Use the following command to enable these settings; they are disabled by default. These settings are synchronized.

```
config system ha
    set uninterruptible-upgrade enable
    set session-pickup enable
end
```

When these settings are enabled, the primary FortiGate-7000 primary FIM uploads firmware to the secondary FortiGate-7000 primary FIM, which uploads the firmware to all of the modules in the secondary FortiGate-7000. Then the modules in the secondary FortiGate-7000 upgrade their firmware, reboot, and resynchronize.

Then all traffic fails over to the secondary FortiGate-7000 which becomes the new primary FortiGate-7000. Then the modules in the new secondary FortiGate-7000 upgrade their firmware and rejoin the cluster. Unless override is enabled, the new primary FortiGate-7000 continues to operate as the primary FortiGate-7000.

Normally, you would want to enable `uninterruptible-upgrade` to minimize traffic interruptions. But `uninterruptible-upgrade` does not have to be enabled. In fact, if a traffic interruption is not going to cause any problems, you can disable `uninterruptible-upgrade` so that the firmware upgrade process takes less time.

As well some firmware upgrades may not support `uninterruptible-upgrade`. For example, `uninterruptible-upgrade` may not be supported if the firmware upgrade also includes a DP2 processor firmware upgrade. Make sure to review the release notes before running a firmware upgrade to verify whether or not enabling `uninterruptible-upgrade` is supported to upgrade to that version.

Distributed clustering

FortiGate-7000 HA supports separating the FortiGate-7000s in an HA cluster to different physical locations. Distributed FortiGate-7000 HA clustering (or geographically distributed FortiGate-7000 HA or geo clustering) can involve two FortiGate-7000s in different rooms in the same building, different buildings in the same location, or even different geographical sites such as different cities, countries or continents.

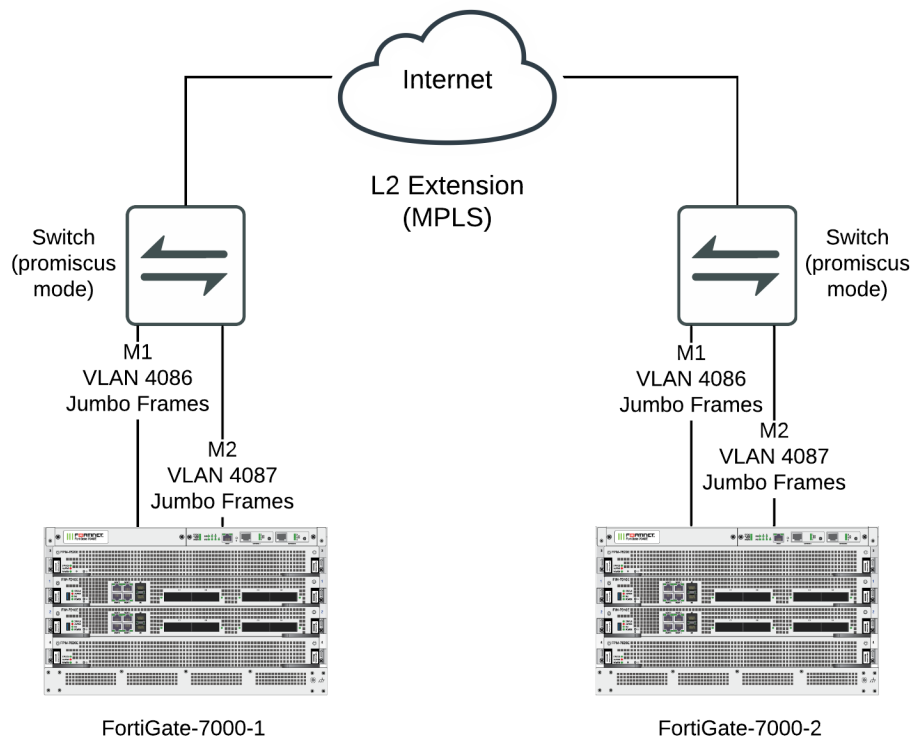
Just like any FortiGate-7000 HA configuration, distributed FortiGate-7000 HA requires heartbeat communication between the FortiGate-7000s over the M1 and M2 interfaces. In a distributed FortiGate-7000 HA configuration this heartbeat communication can take place over the Internet or over other transmission methods including satellite linkups.

Most Data Center Interconnect (DCI) or MPLS-based solutions that support layer 2 extensions and VLAN tags between the remote data centers should also support HA heartbeat communication between the FortiGates in the distributed locations. Using VLANs and switches in promiscuous mode to pass all traffic between the locations can also be helpful.

You cannot change HA heartbeat IP addresses, so the heartbeat interfaces have to be able to communication over the same subnet.

The M1 and M2 interface traffic must be separated. You can do this by using separate channels for each interface or by configuring the M1 and M2 interfaces to use different VLANs.

Example FortiGate-7000 distributed clustering configuration



Because of the possible distance between sites, it may take a relatively long time for heartbeat packets to be transmitted between the FortiGate-7000s. This could lead to a split brain scenario. To avoid a split brain scenario you can modify heartbeat timing so that the cluster expects extra time between heartbeat packets. As a general rule, set the heartbeat failover time (`hb-interval`) to be longer than the max latency or round trip time (RTT). You could also increase the `hb-lost-threshold` to tolerate losing heartbeat packets if the network connection is less reliable.

In addition you could use different link paths for heartbeat packets to optimize HA heartbeat communication. You could also configure QoS on the links used for HA heartbeat traffic to make sure heartbeat communication has the highest priority.

For information about changing the heartbeat interval and other heartbeat timing related settings, see [Modifying heartbeat timing on page 106](#).

Modifying heartbeat timing

If the FortiGate-7000s in the HA cluster do not receive heartbeat packets on time, the FortiGate-7000s in the HA configuration may each determine that the other FortiGate-7000 has failed. HA heartbeat packets may not be sent on time because of network issues. For example, if the M1 and M2 communications links between the FortiGate-7000s become too busy to handle the heartbeat traffic. Also, in a distributed clustering configuration the round trip time (RTT) between the FortiGate-7000s may be longer the expected time between heartbeat packets.

In addition, if the FortiGate-7000s becomes excessively busy, they may delay sending heartbeat packets.

Even with these delays, the FortiGate-7000 HA cluster can continue to function normally as long as the HA heartbeat configuration supports longer delays between heartbeat packets and more missed heartbeat packets.

You can use the following commands to configure heartbeat timing:

```
config system ha
    set hb-interval <interval_integer>
    set hb-lost-threshold <threshold_integer>
    set hello-holddown <holddown_integer>
end
```

Changing the heartbeat interval

The heartbeat interval is the time between sending HA heartbeat packets. The heartbeat interval range is 1 to 20 (100*ms). The heartbeat interval default is 2 (200 ms).

A heartbeat interval of 2 means the time between heartbeat packets is 200 ms. Changing the heartbeat interval to 5 changes the time between heartbeat packets to 500 ms ($5 * 100\text{ms} = 500\text{ms}$).

Use the following CLI command to increase the heartbeat interval to 10:

```
config system ha
    set hb-interval 10
end
```

Changing the lost heartbeat threshold

The lost heartbeat threshold is the number of consecutive heartbeat packets that a FortiGate does not receive before assuming that a failure has occurred. The default value of 6 means that if a FortiGate-7000 does not receive 6 heartbeat packets it determines that the other FortiGate-7000 in the cluster has failed. The range is 1 to 60 packets.

The lower the `hb-lost-threshold`, the faster a FortiGate-7000 HA configuration responds when a failure occurs. However, sometimes heartbeat packets may not be received because the other FortiGate-7000 is very busy or because of network conditions. This can lead to a false positive failure detection. To reduce these false positives you can increase the `hb-lost-threshold`.

Use the following command to increase the lost heartbeat threshold to 12:

```
config system ha
    set hb-lost-threshold 12
end
```

Adjusting the heartbeat interval and lost heartbeat threshold

The heartbeat interval combines with the lost heartbeat threshold to set how long a FortiGate-7000 waits before assuming that the other FortiGate-7000 has failed and is no longer sending heartbeat packets. By default, if a FortiGate-7000 does not receive a heartbeat packet from a cluster unit for $6 * 200 = 1200$ milliseconds or 1.2 seconds the FortiGate-7000 assumes that the other FortiGate-7000 has failed.

You can increase both the heartbeat interval and the lost heartbeat threshold to reduce false positives. For example, increasing the heartbeat interval to 20 and the lost heartbeat threshold to 30 means a failure will be assumed if no heartbeat packets are received after $30 * 2000$ milliseconds = 60,000 milliseconds, or 60 seconds.

Use the following command to increase the heartbeat interval to 20 and the lost heartbeat threshold to 30:

```
config system ha
    set hb-lost-threshold 20
    set hb-interval 30
end
```

Changing the time to wait in the hello state

The hello state hold-down time is the number of seconds that a FortiGate-7000 waits before changing from hello state to work state. After a failure or when starting up, FortiGate-7000s in HA mode operate in the hello state to send and receive heartbeat packets to find each other and form a cluster. A FortiGate-7000 should change from the hello state to work state after it finds the FortiGate-7000 to form a cluster with. If for some reason the FortiGate-7000s cannot find each other during the hello state both FortiGate-7000s may assume that the other one has failed and each could form separate clusters of one FortiGate-7000. The FortiGate-7000s could eventually find each other and negotiate to form a cluster, possibly causing a network interruption as they re-negotiate.

One reason for a delay of the FortiGate-7000s finding each other could be the FortiGate-7000s are located at different sites or for some other reason communication is delayed between the heartbeat interfaces. If you find that your FortiGate-7000s leave the hello state before finding each other you can increase the time that they wait in the hello state. The hello state hold-down time range is 5 to 300 seconds. The hello state hold-down time default is 20 seconds.

Use the following command to increase the time to wait in the hello state to 1 minute (60 seconds):

```
config system ha
    set hello-holddown 60
end
```

Changing how long routes stay in a cluster unit routing table

You can use the HA route time to live (`route-ttl`) option to control how long routes remain active in the new primary (master) FortiGate-7000 after an FGCP HA failover. The default `route-ttl` is 600 seconds. The range is 5 to 3600 seconds (one hour). You can use the following command to change the `route-ttl` time.

```
config system ha
    set route-ttl <time>
end
```



The FortiGate- 7000 does not support the `route-wait` and `route-hold` options.

To maintain communication sessions through a new primary FortiGate-7000, routes remain active in the routing table for the `route-ttl` time while the new primary FortiGate-7000 acquires new routes. Normally keeping `route-ttl` to the default value of 600 seconds (10 minutes) is acceptable because acquiring new routes and populating the routing tables of multiple FIMs and FPMs can take a few minutes.

If the primary FortiGate-7000 needs to acquire a very large number of routes, or if for other reasons there is a delay in acquiring all routes, the primary FortiGate-7000 may not be able to maintain all communication sessions after a failover.

You can increase the `route-ttl` time if you find that communication sessions are lost after a failover. Increasing the `route-ttl` time allows the primary unit to use synchronized routes that are already in the routing table for a longer period of time while waiting to acquire new routes.

For more information, see [Synchronizing kernel routing tables](#).

Session failover (session-pickup)

Session failover means that after a failover, communications sessions resume on the new primary FortiGate-7000 with minimal or no interruption. Two categories of sessions need to be resumed after a failover:

- Sessions passing through the cluster
- Sessions terminated by the cluster

Session failover (also called session-pickup) is not enabled by default for FortiGate-7000 HA. If sessions pickup is enabled, while the FortiGate-7000 HA cluster is operating the primary FortiGate-7000 informs the secondary FortiGate-7000 of changes to the primary FortiGate-7000 connection and state tables for TCP and UDP sessions passing through the cluster, keeping the secondary FortiGate-7000 up-to-date with the traffic currently being processed by the cluster.

After a failover the new primary FortiGate-7000 recognizes open sessions that were being handled by the cluster. The sessions continue to be processed by the new primary FortiGate-7000 and are handled according to their last known state.



Session-pickup has some limitations. For example, session failover is not supported for sessions being scanned by proxy-based security profiles. Session failover is supported for sessions being scanned by flow-based security profiles; however, flow-based sessions that fail over are not inspected after they fail over.

Sessions terminated by the cluster include management sessions (such as HTTPS connections to the FortiGate GUI or SSH connection to the CLI as well as SNMP and logging and so on). Also included in this category are IPsec VPN, SSL VPN, sessions terminated by the cluster, and explicit proxy sessions. In general, whether or not session-pickup is enabled, these sessions do not failover and have to be restarted.

Enabling session synchronization for TCP, SCTP, and connectionless sessions

To enable session synchronization for TCP and SCTP sessions, enter:

```
config system ha
    set session-pickup enable
end
```

Turning on session synchronization for TCP and SCTP sessions by enabling `session-pickup` also turns on session synchronization for connectionless sessions, such as ICMP and UDP, by enabling `session-pickup-connectionless`. You can now choose to reduce processing overhead by not synchronizing connectionless sessions if you don't need to. If you want to synchronize connectionless sessions you can enable `session-pickup-connectionless`.

When `session-pickup` is enabled, sessions in the primary FortiGate-7000 TCP and connectionless session tables are synchronized to the secondary FortiGate-7000. As soon as a new session is added to the primary FortiGate-7000

session table, that session is synchronized to the secondary FortiGate-7000. This synchronization happens as quickly as possible to keep the session tables synchronized.

If the primary FortiGate-7000 fails, the new primary FortiGate-7000 uses its synchronized session tables to resume all TCP and connectionless sessions that were being processed by the former primary FortiGate-7000 with only minimal interruption. Under ideal conditions all sessions should be resumed. This is not guaranteed though and under less than ideal conditions some sessions may need to be restarted.

If session pickup is disabled

If you disable session pickup, the FortiGate-7000 HA cluster does not keep track of sessions and after a failover, active sessions have to be restarted or resumed. Most session can be resumed as a normal result of how TCP and UDP resumes communication after any routine network interruption.



The session-pickup setting does not affect session failover for sessions terminated by the cluster.

If you do not require session failover protection, leaving session pickup disabled may reduce CPU usage and reduce HA heartbeat network bandwidth usage. Also if your FortiGate-7000 HA cluster is mainly being used for traffic that is not synchronized (for example, for proxy-based security profile processing) enabling session pickup is not recommended since most sessions will not be failed over anyway.

Reducing the number of sessions that are synchronized

If session pickup is enabled, as soon as new sessions are added to the primary unit session table they are synchronized to the other cluster units. Enable the `session-pickup-delay` CLI option to reduce the number of TCP sessions that are synchronized by synchronizing TCP sessions only if they remain active for more than 30 seconds. Enabling this option could greatly reduce the number of sessions that are synchronized if a cluster typically processes very many short duration sessions, which is typical of most HTTP traffic for example.

Use the following command to enable a 30-second session pickup delay:

```
config system ha
  set session-pickup-delay enable
end
```

Enabling session pickup delay means that if a failover occurs more TCP sessions may not be resumed after a failover. In most cases short duration sessions can be restarted with only a minor traffic interruption. However, if you notice too many sessions not resuming after a failover you might want to disable this setting.

The `session-pickup-delay` option applies to TCP sessions only and does not apply to connectionless and SCTP sessions.

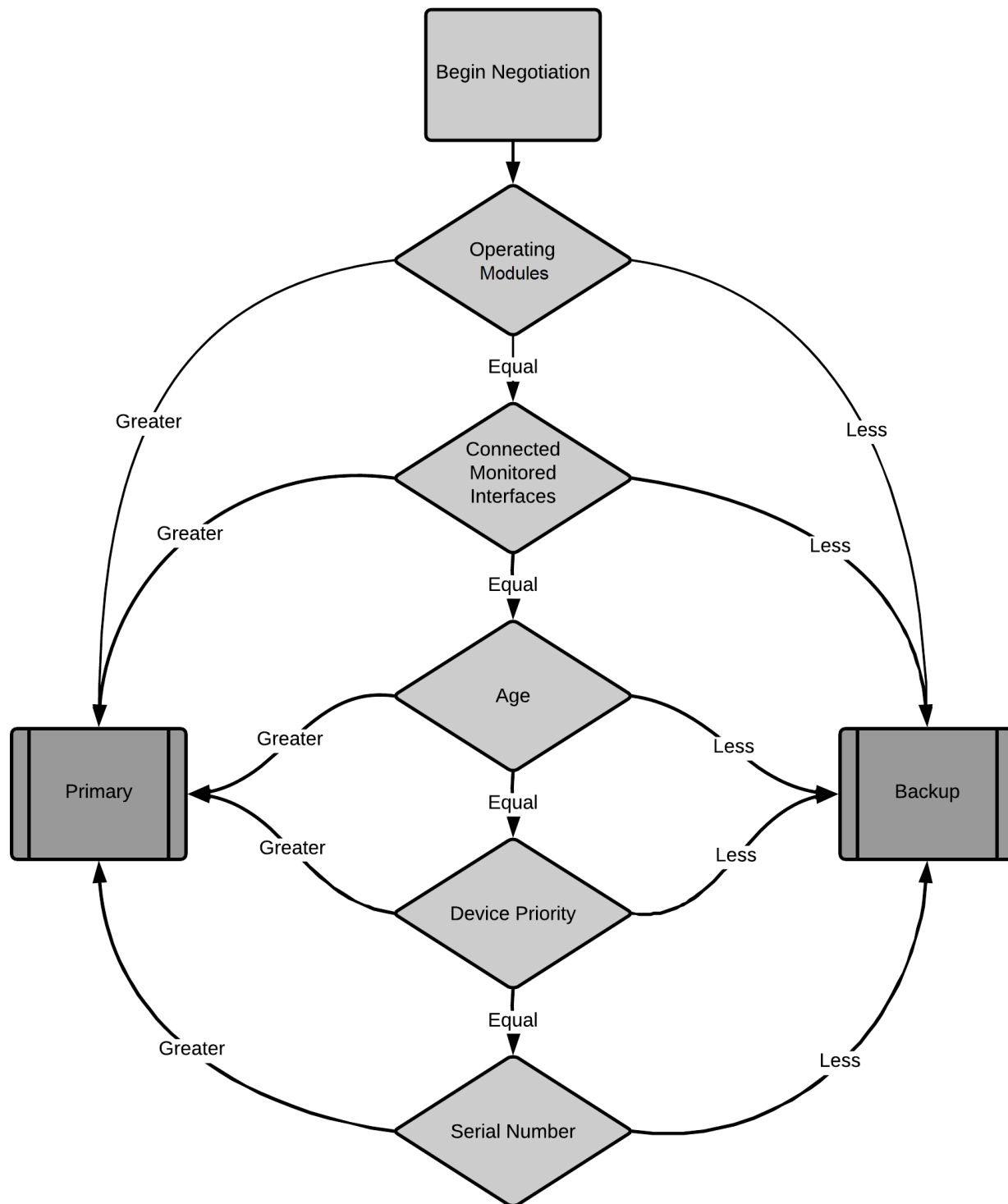
Primary FortiGate-7000 selection

Once two FortiGate-7000s recognize that they can form a cluster, they negotiate to select a primary FortiGate-7000. Primary FortiGate-7000 selection occurs automatically based on the selection criteria shown in the diagram below. After

the cluster selects the primary FortiGate-7000, the other FortiGate-7000 becomes the secondary.

Negotiation and primary FortiGate-7000 selection also takes place if the one of the criteria for selecting the primary FortiGate-7000 changes. For example, an interface can become disconnected or a module can fail. After this happens, the cluster can renegotiate to select a new primary FortiGate-7000 using the same selection criteria.

Selecting the Primary FortiGate-7000



If there are no module failures and if you haven't configured any settings to influence primary FortiGate-7000 selection, the FortiGate-7000 with the highest serial number becomes the primary FortiGate-7000.

This section highlights some aspects of primary FortiGate-7000 selection. For more details about how this works, see [Primary unit selection](#).

Age and primary FortiGate-7000 selection

Age (or uptime) is also a factor in primary FortiGate-7000 selection. Normally when two FortiGate-7000s start, their uptimes are similar and do not affect primary FortiGate-7000 selection. However, during operation, if one of the FortiGate-7000s goes down the other will have a much higher age or uptime and will be selected as the primary FortiGate-7000 before checking priority and serial number.

In some cases, age differences can result in the wrong FortiGate-7000 becoming the primary FortiGate-7000. For example, if the FortiGate-7000 set to a high priority reboots, it will have a lower age than other FortiGate-7000 when it rejoins the cluster. Since age takes precedence over priority it will become the secondary FortiGate-7000 when it rejoins the cluster.

One way to resolve this issue is to reboot both FortiGate-7000s in the cluster at the same time to reset the age of both FortiGate-7000s. However, doing this would disrupt traffic. Instead you can use the following command to reset the age of one the primary FortiGate-7000 to zero.

```
diagnose sys ha reset-uptime
```

The primary FortiGate-7000 now has the lowest age and the other FortiGate-7000 will have the highest age and can then become the primary FortiGate-7000.



The `diagnose sys ha reset-uptime` command should only be used as a temporary solution. You should reboot the FortiGate-7000s during a maintenance window to permanently bring their ages back together.

Device priority and primary FortiGate-7000 selection

In some situations you may want to select a FortiGate-7000 to always become the primary FortiGate-7000. You can do this by setting its device priority higher. You can change the device priority of an FIM from the **System > HA** GUI page or by using the following command:

```
config system ha
  set priority <number>
end
```

The default priority is 128.

During negotiation, the FortiGate-7000 with the highest device priority becomes the primary FortiGate-7000.

Override and primary FortiGate-7000 selection

You can enable override to select a FortiGate-7000 to always becomes the primary FortiGate-7000. Enabling override changes how primary select works.

Module failure and primary FortiGate-7000 selection

If a module (FIM or an FPM) fails, the FortiGate-7000 cluster negotiates to select a new primary FortiGate-7000 and the FortiGate-7000 with the most operating modules becomes the primary FortiGate-7000.

You can also configure board failover tolerance to control how a FortiGate-7000 cluster responds to a module failure.

```
config system ha
    set board-failover-tolerance <tolerance>
end
```

Where <tolerance> can be from 0 to 3. A tolerance of 0 (the default) means that if a single module fails in the primary FortiGate-7000, a failover occurs and the FortiGate-7000 with the fewest failed modules becomes the new primary FortiGate-7000. Higher failover tolerances mean that more module failures must occur before a failover occurs.

Verifying primary FortiGate-7000 selection

You can use the `get system ha status` command to verify which FortiGate-7000 has become the primary FortiGate-7000. The command output shows which FortiGate-7000 is currently operating as the primary FortiGate-7000. The following command output excerpt shows that the FortiGate-7000 labeled as chassis 2 has become the primary (master) FortiGate-7000:

```
get system ha status
Master selected using:
HA Health Status: OK
Model: FortiGate-7000E
Mode: HA A-P
Group: 7
Debug: 0
Cluster Uptime: 0 days 16:42:5
...
Master: CH16, FG74E83E16000016, cluster index = 0
Slave : FG74E83E16000015, FG74E83E16000015, cluster index = 1
number of vcluster: 1
vcluster 1: work 10.101.11.20
Master: FG74E83E16000016, operating cluster index = 0
Slave : FG74E83E16000015, operating cluster index = 1
Chassis Status: (Local chassis ID: 2)
    Chassis ID 1: Slave Chassis
        Slot ID 1: Master Slot
        Slot ID 2: Slave Slot
    Chassis ID 2: Master Chassis
        Slot ID 1: Master Slot
        Slot ID 2: Slave Slot
```

Primary FortiGate-7000 selection and override

When configuring FortiGate-7000 HA, if you want one of the FortiGate-7000s to always become the primary FortiGate-7000 you can enable `override` on that FortiGate-7000. For `override` to be effective, you must also set the device priority highest on this FortiGate-7000.

To enable override and increase device priority:

```
config system ha
    set override enable
    set priority 200
end
```

The FortiGate-7000 with override enabled and the highest device priority always becomes the primary FortiGate-7000.

In most cases, with override enabled the cluster will negotiate more often. For example, with override enabled it is more likely that changes to the secondary FortiGate-7000 may cause the cluster to negotiate. More frequent negotiation can lead to more traffic disruptions.

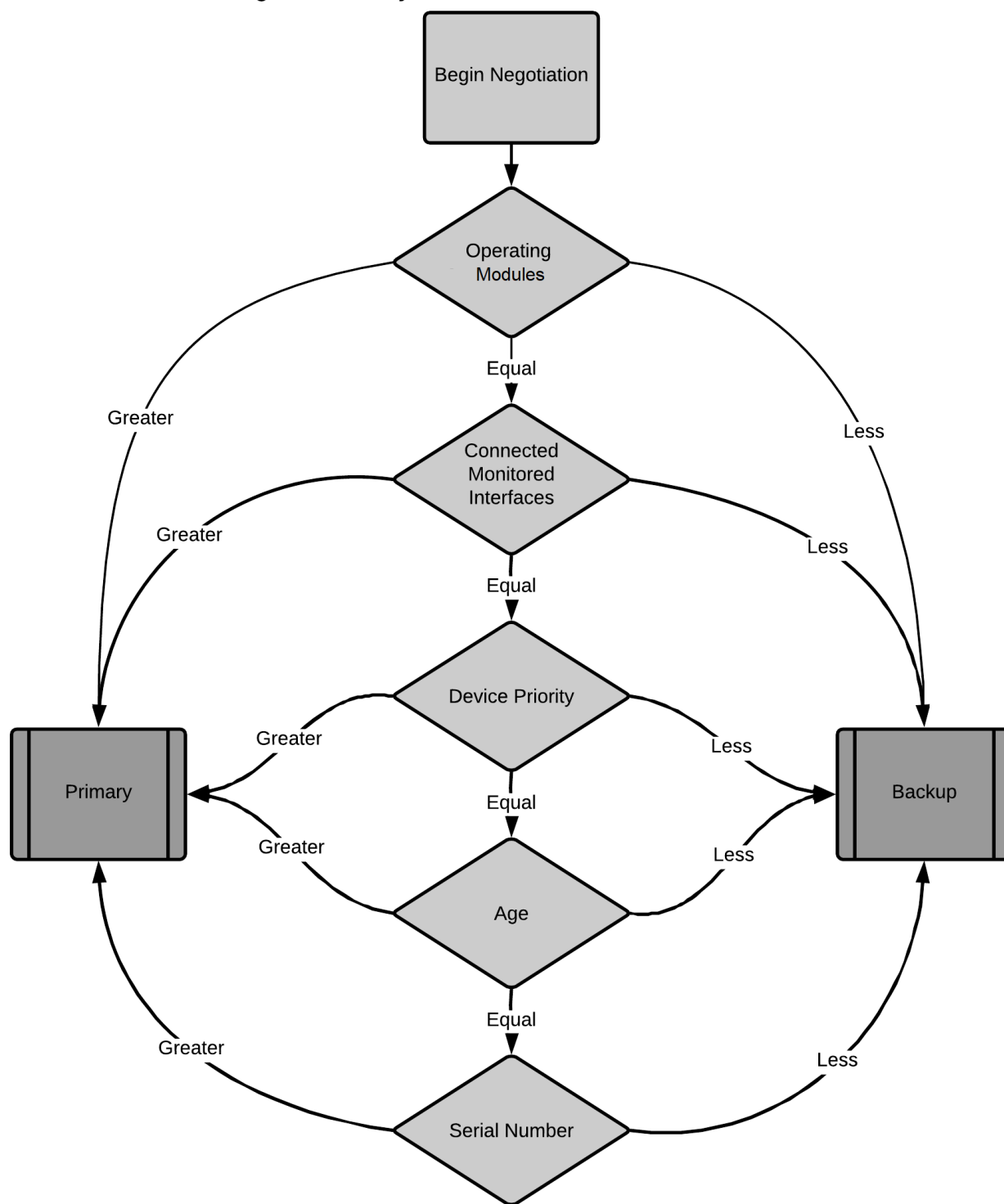
This section highlights some aspects of primary FortiGate-7000 selection. For more details about how this works, see [HA override](#).

Enabling override changes primary FortiGate-7000 selection

Enabling `override` changes the order of primary FortiGate-7000 selection. As shown below, if `override` is enabled, primary FortiGate-7000 selection considers device priority before age and serial number. This means that if you set the device priority higher on one FortiGate-7000, with `override` enabled this FortiGate-7000 becomes the primary FortiGate-7000 even if its age and serial number are lower.

Similar to when `override` is disabled, when `override` is enabled primary FortiGate-7000 selection checks for operating modules and connected monitored interfaces first. So if interface monitoring is enabled, the FortiGate-7000 with the most disconnected monitored interfaces cannot become the primary FortiGate-7000, even if this FortiGate-7000 has the highest device priority.

Selecting the Primary FortiGate-7000 with Override enabled



Link failover (port monitoring or interface monitoring)

Link failover means that if a monitored interface fails, the FortiGate-7000 cluster reorganizes to reestablish a link to the network that the monitored interface was connected to and to continue operating with minimal or no disruption of network traffic.

You configure monitored interfaces (also called interface monitoring or port monitoring) by selecting FIM front panel interfaces to monitor as part of the HA configuration.

You can monitor up to 64 interfaces. The FGCP synchronizes the interface monitoring configurations to both FortiGate-7000s in the cluster.

The interfaces that you can monitor appear on the HA GUI page **Monitor Interfaces** list. You can monitor any FIM interfaces including redundant interfaces and 802.3ad aggregate interfaces.

You cannot monitor the following types of interfaces (you cannot select these types of interfaces on the Monitor Interfaces list):

- VLAN subinterfaces.
- IPsec VPN interfaces.
- Individual physical interfaces that have been added to a redundant or 802.3ad aggregate interface.



You should only monitor interfaces that are connected to networks, because a failover may occur if you monitor an unconnected interface. For this reason, you should also wait until your FortiGate-7000 HA setup has been configured and connected and is operating as expected before enabling interface monitoring.

To enable interface monitoring

From the GUI, go to **System > HA** and add interfaces to the **Monitor Interfaces** list.

From the CLI, enter the following command to monitor the 1-B1/2 and 2-C1/10 interfaces:

```
config system ha
  set monitor 1-B1/2 2-C1/10
end
```

With interface monitoring enabled, during FortiGate-7000 cluster operation, the cluster monitors each FIM in the cluster to determine if the monitored interfaces are operating and connected. Each FIM can detect a failure of its network interface hardware.



FIMs cannot determine if the switches that its interfaces are connected to are still connected to networks. However, you can use remote IP monitoring to make sure that the cluster unit can connect to downstream network devices. See [Remote link failover on page 118](#).

If a monitored interface on the primary FortiGate-7000 fails

Because the primary FortiGate-7000 receives all traffic processed by the cluster, a FortiGate-7000 cluster can only process traffic from a network if the primary FortiGate-7000 can connect to it. So, if the link between a network and the

primary FortiGate-7000 fails, to maintain communication with this network, the cluster must set the FortiGate-7000 that is still connected to this network to become the primary FortiGate-7000. Unless another link failure has occurred, the new primary FortiGate-7000 will have an active link to the network and will be able to maintain communication with it.

To support link failover, the FortiGate-7000s store link state information for all monitored interfaces in a link state database. If one of the monitored interfaces on one of the FortiGate-7000s becomes disconnected or fails, this information is immediately shared with the other FortiGate-7000 in the cluster.

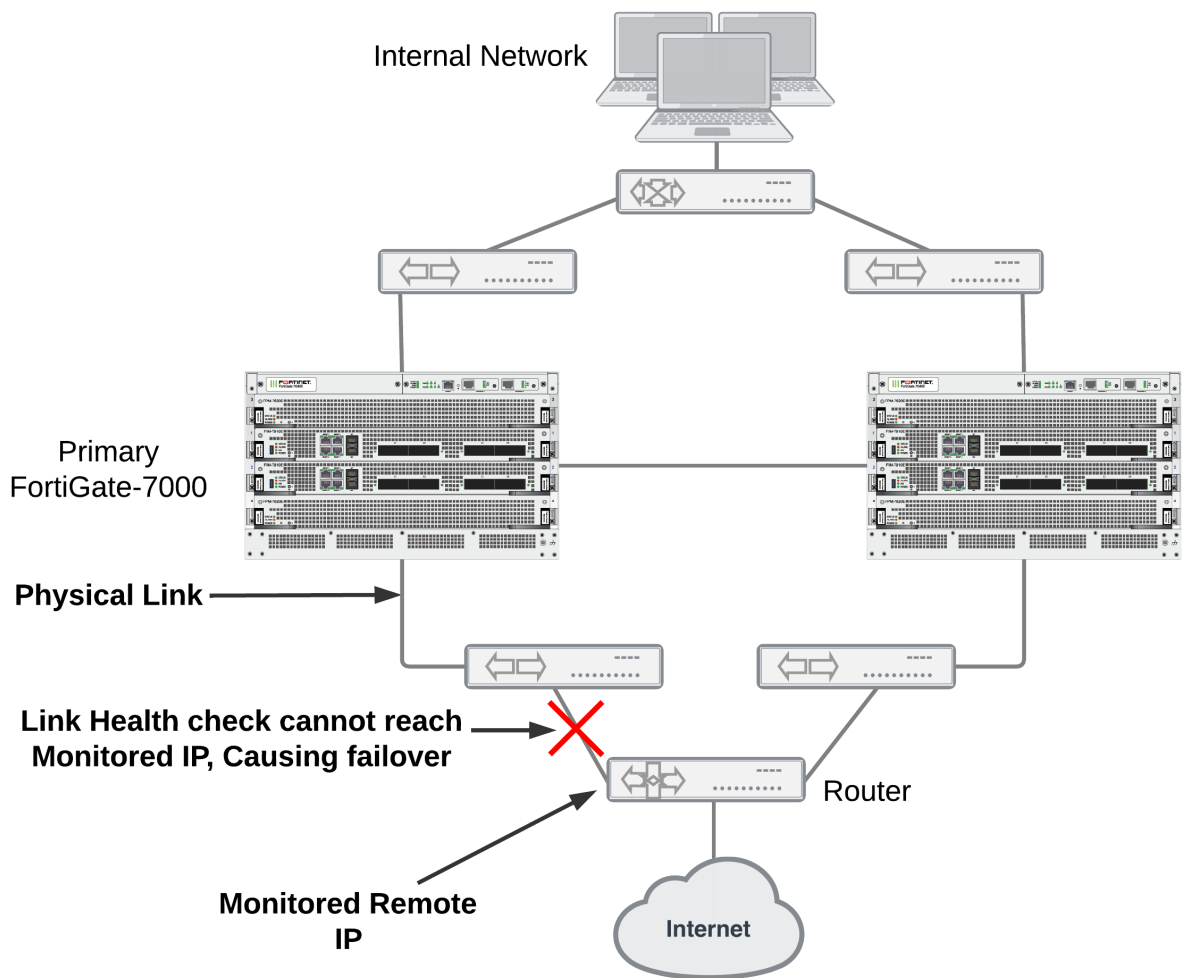
If a monitored interface on the primary FortiGate-7000 fails, the cluster renegotiates to select the primary FortiGate-7000 using the process described in [Primary FortiGate-7000 selection on page 110](#). Because the FortiGate-7000 with the failed monitored interface has the lowest monitor priority, the other FortiGate-7000 becomes the primary FortiGate-7000. The new primary FortiGate-7000 should have fewer link failures.

If a monitored interface on the secondary FortiGate-7000 fails

If a monitored interface on a the secondary FortiGate-7000 fails, this information is shared with the primary FortiGate-7000. The cluster does not renegotiate. The secondary FortiGate-7000 with the failed monitored interface continues to function in the cluster.

Remote link failover

Remote link failover (also called remote IP monitoring) is similar to interface monitoring and link health monitoring (also known as dead gateway detection). Remote IP monitoring uses link health monitors to test connectivity between the primary FortiGate-7000 and remote network devices such as a downstream router. Remote IP monitoring causes a failover if one or more of these remote IP addresses does not respond to link health checking.



In the simplified example topology shown above, the switch connected directly to the primary FortiGate-7000 is operating normally but the link on the other side of the switches fails. As a result, traffic can no longer flow between the primary FortiGate-7000 and the Internet.

This section highlights some aspects of primary FortiGate-7000 remote link failover. For more details about how this works, see [Remote link failover](#).

Configuring remote IP monitoring

Enter the following command to enable HA remote IP monitoring on the 1-B1/1 interface:

```
config system ha
  set pingserver-monitor-interface 1-B1/1
  set pingserver-failover-threshold 5
  set pingserver-flip-timeout 120
end
```

Keep the `pingserver-failover-threshold` set to the default value of 5. This means a failover occurs if the link health monitor doesn't get a response after 5 attempts.

Set the `pingserver-flip-timeout` set to 120 minutes. After a failover, if HA remote IP monitoring on the new primary unit also causes a failover, the flip timeout prevents the failover from occurring until the timer runs out. Setting the `pingserver-flip-timeout` to 120 means that remote IP monitoring can only cause a failover every 120 minutes. This flip timeout is required to prevent repeating failovers if remote IP monitoring causes a failover from all cluster units because none of the cluster units can connect to the monitored IP addresses.

Enter the following command to add a link health monitor for the 1-B1/1 interface and to set HA remote IP monitoring priority for this link health monitor.

```
config system link-monitor
  edit ha-link-monitor
    set server 192.168.20.20
    set srcintf port2
    set ha-priority 1
    set interval 5
    set failtime 2
end
```

The `detectserver` option sets the remote IP address to monitor to 192.168.20.20.

Leave the `ha-priority` keyword set to the default value of 1. You only need to change this priority if you change the HA `pingserver-failover-threshold`. The `ha-priority` setting is not synchronized among the FortiGate-7000s in the HA configuration.



The `ha-priority` setting is not synchronized. So if you want to change the `ha-priority` setting you must change it separately on each FortiGate-7000. Otherwise it will remain set to the default value of 1.

Use the `interval` option to set the time between link health checks and use the `failtime` keyword to set the number of times that a health check can fail before a failure is detected (the failover threshold). The example reduces the failover threshold to 2 but keeps the health check interval at the default value of 5.

FortiGate-7000 FGSP

FortiGate-7000 supports the FortiGate Session Life Support Protocol (FGSP) (also called standalone session sync) to synchronize sessions among up to four FortiGate-7000s. All of the FortiGate-7000s must be the same model and running the same firmware and must have their own network configuration (interface IPs, routing, and so on). FGSP synchronizes individual VDOM sessions. All of the devices in an FGSP deployment must include the VDOMs to be synchronized and for each device the VDOMs must have the same firewall configuration.

For details about FGSP for FortiOS 6.0, see: [FortiOS 6.0 Handbook: FGSP](#).

FortiGate-7000 FGSP support has the following limitations:

- FortiGate-7000 FGSP can use the M1 or M2 interface for session synchronization. FortiGate-7000 FGSP does not support using a LAG consisting of the M1 and M2 interfaces for session synchronization.
- To use the M1 or the M2 interface for session synchronization, you must give the interface an IP address and optionally set up routing for the interface as required. Ideally the session synchronization interface of each FortiGate-7000 would be on the same network and that network would only be used for session synchronization traffic. However, you can configure routing to send session synchronization traffic between networks. NAT between session synchronization interfaces is not supported.
- You can't use data interfaces for FGSP session synchronization.

- You can use configuration synchronization to synchronize the configurations of the FortiGate-7000s in the FGSP deployment (see [Standalone configuration synchronization on page 125](#)). You can use the M1 and M2 interfaces for configuration synchronization. You can also configure the FortiGate-7000s separately or use FortiManager to keep key parts of the configuration, such as security policies, synchronized.
- FortiGate-7000 FGSP doesn't support setting up IPv6 session filters using the `config session-sync-filter` option.
- FGSP doesn't synchronize ICMP sessions when ICMP load balancing is set to `to-master`. If you want to synchronize ICMP sessions, set ICMP load balancing to either `src-ip`, `dst-ip`, or `src-dst-ip`. See [ICMP load balancing on page 74](#) for more information.
- Asymmetric IPv6 SCTP traffic sessions are not supported. These sessions are dropped.
- Inter-cluster session synchronization, or FGSP between FGCP clusters, is not supported.
- FGSP IPsec tunnel synchronization is not supported.
- Fragmented packet synchronization is not supported.

FGSP session synchronization options

FortiGate-7000 FGSP supports the following HA session synchronization options:

```
config system ha
    set session-pickup {disable | enable}
    set session-pickup-connectionless {disable | enable}
    set session-pickup-expectation {disable | enable}
    set session-pickup-nat {disable | enable}
    set session-pickup-delay {disable | enable}
end
```

Some notes:

- The `session-pickup-expectation` and `session-pickup-nat` options only apply to the FGSP. FGCP synchronizes NAT sessions when you enable `session-pickup`.
- The `session-pickup-delay` option applies to TCP sessions only and does not apply to connectionless and SCTP sessions.
- The `session-pickup-delay` option should not be used in FGSP topologies where the traffic can take an asymmetric path (forward and reverse traffic going through different FortiGate-7000s).

Enabling session synchronization

Use the following command to synchronize TCP and SCTP sessions between FortiGate-7000s.

```
config system ha
    set session-pickup enable
end
```

Enabling `session-pickup` also enables session synchronization for connectionless protocol sessions, such as ICMP and UDP, by enabling `session-pickup-connectionless`. If you don't want to synchronize connectionless sessions, you can manually disable `session-pickup-connectionless`.

Synchronizing expectation sessions

Enable `session-pickup-expectation` to synchronize expectation sessions. FortiOS session helpers keep track of the communication of Layer-7 protocols such as FTP and SIP that have control sessions and expectation sessions.

Usually the control sessions establish the link between server and client and negotiate the ports and protocols that will be used for data communications. The session helpers then create expectation sessions through the FortiGate for the ports and protocols negotiated by the control session.

The expectation sessions are usually the sessions that actually communicate data. For FTP, the expectation sessions transmit files being uploaded or downloaded. For SIP, the expectation sessions transmit voice and video data. Expectation sessions usually have a timeout value of 30 seconds. If the communication from the server is not initiated within 30 seconds the expectation session times out and traffic will be denied.

Synchronizing NAT sessions

Enable `session-pickup-nat` to synchronize NAT sessions in an FGSP deployment.

Synchronizing TCP sessions older than 30 seconds

Enable `session-pickup-delay` to synchronize TCP sessions only if they remain active for more than 30 seconds. This option improves performance when `session-pickup` is enabled by reducing the number of sessions that are synchronized. This option does not affect SCTP or connectionless sessions.

Synchronizing sessions older than 30 seconds

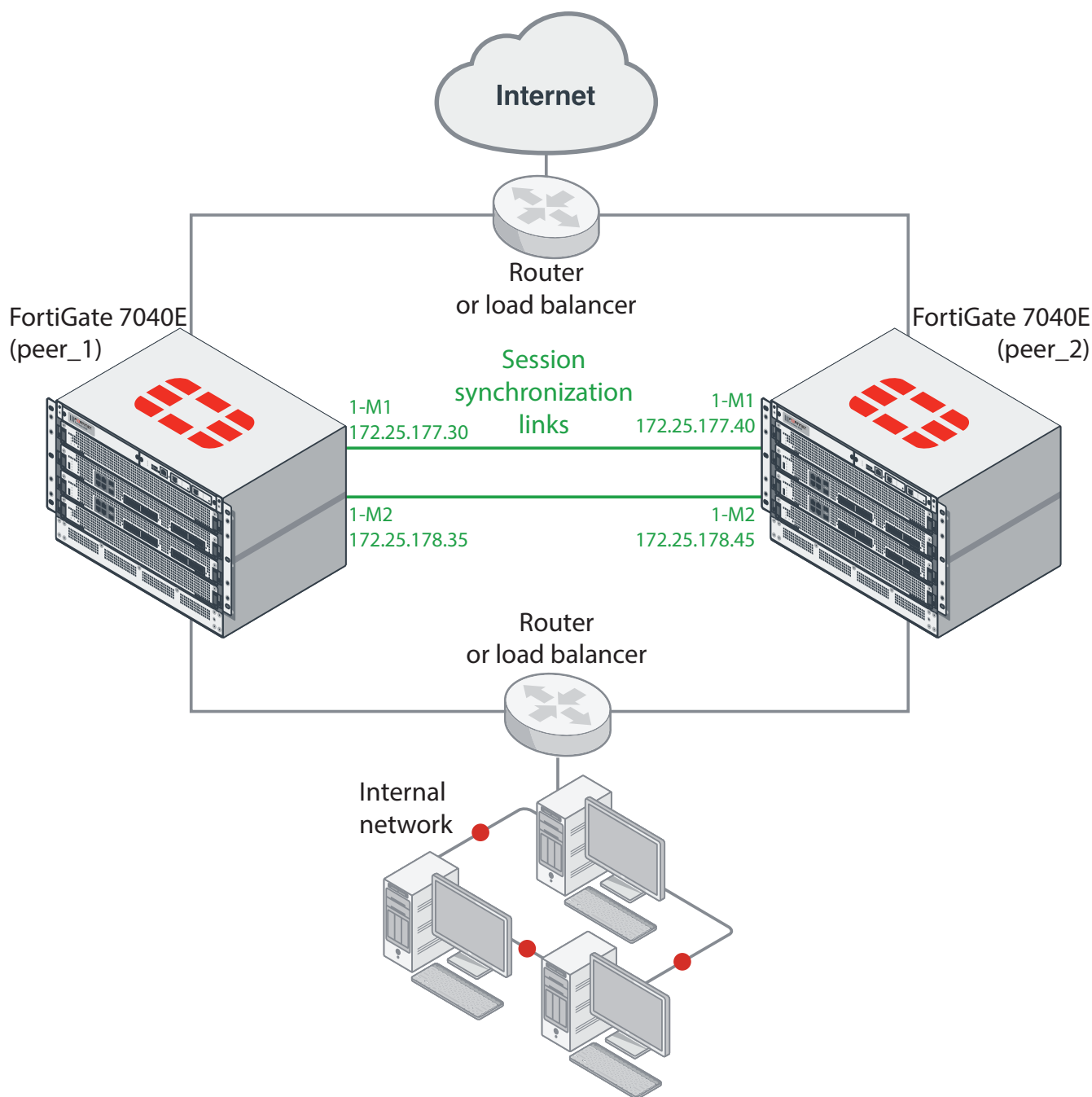
Enable `session-pickup-delay` to synchronize TCP sessions only if they remain active for more than 30 seconds. This option improves performance when `session-pickup` is enabled by reducing the number of TCP sessions that are synchronized. This option does not affect SCTP or connectionless sessions.

Example FortiGate-7000 FGSP configuration

This example shows how to configure FGSP to synchronize sessions between two FortiGate-7040Es for the root VDOM and for a second VDOM, named `vdom-1`. The example uses the 1-M1 interface for root session synchronization and the 1-M2 interface for `vdom-1` session synchronization. The 1-M1 interfaces are connected to the 172.25.177.0/24 network and the 1-M2 interfaces are connected to the 172.25.178.0/24 network.

The interfaces of the two FortiGate-7040Es must have their own IP addresses and their own networking configuration. You can give the FortiGate-7040Es different host names, in this example, `peer_1` and `peer_2`, to make them easier to identify.

This example also adds configuration synchronization and sets the `peer_1` device priority higher so that it becomes the config sync master. Once configuration synchronization is enabled, you can log into `peer_1` and add firewall policies and make other configuration changes and these configuration changes will be synchronized to `peer_2`. For information about configuration synchronization, including its limitations, see [Standalone configuration synchronization on page 125](#).

Example FortiGate-7000 FGSP configuration

1. Configure the routers or load balancers to distribute sessions to the two FortiGate-7040s.
2. Change the host names of the FortiGate-7040Es to peer_1 and peer_2.
3. Configure network settings for each FortiGate-7040E to allow them to connect to their networks and route traffic.
4. Add the vdom-1 VDOM to each FortiGate-7040E.
5. Configure the 1-M1 and 1-M2 interfaces of peer_1 with IP addresses on the 172.25.177.0/24 and 172.25.178.0/24 networks:

```
config system interface
  edit 1-M1
```

```

    set ip 172.25.177.30 255.255.255.0
next
edit 1-M2
    set ip 172.25.178.35 255.255.255.0
end

```

- 6. Configure the 1-M1 and 1-M2 interfaces of peer_2 with IP addresses on the 172.25.177.0/24 and 172.25.178.0/24 networks:**

```

config system interface
    edit 1-M1
        set ip 172.25.177.40 255.255.255.0
    next
    edit 1-M2
        set ip 172.25.178.45 255.255.255.0
    end

```

- 7. On peer_1, configure session synchronization for the root and vdom-1 VDOMs.**

```

config system cluster-sync
    edit 1
        set peervd mgmt-vdom
        set peerip 172.25.177.40
        set syncvd root
    next
    edit 2
        set peervd mgmt-vdom
        set peerip 172.25.178.45
        set syncvd vdom-1
    next

```

For the root vdom, peervd will always be mgmt-vdom and peerip is the IP address of the 1-M1 interface of peer_2.

For vdom-1, peervd will always be mgmt-vdom and peerip is the IP address of the 1-M2 interface of peer_2.

- 8. On peer_1, enable configuration synchronization, configure the heartbeat interfaces, and set a higher device priority. This makes peer_1 become the config sync master.**

```

config system ha
    set standalone-config-sync enable
    set priority 250
    set hbdev 1-M1 50 1-M2 50
end

```

- 9. On peer_2, configure session synchronization for the root and vdom-1 VDOMs.**

```

config system cluster-sync
    edit 1
        set peervd mgmt-vdom
        set peerip 172.25.177.30
        set syncvd root
    next
    edit 2
        set peervd mgmt-vdom
        set peerip 172.25.178.35
        set syncvd vdom-1
    next

```

For the root VDOM, peervd will always be mgmt-vdom and peerip is the IP address of the 1-M1 interface of peer_1.

For vdom-1, peervd will always be mgmt-vdom and peerip is the IP address of the 1-M2 interface of peer_1.

- 10. On peer_2, enable configuration synchronization, configure the heartbeat interfaces, and leave the device priority set to the default value.**


```
config system ha
    set standalone-config-sync enable
    set hbdev 1-M1 50 1-M2 50
end
```

As sessions are forwarded by the routers or load balancers to one of the FortiGate-7040Es, the FGSP synchronizes the sessions to the other FortiGate-7040E. You can log into peer_1 and make configuration changes, which are synchronized to peer_2.

Standalone configuration synchronization

FortiGate-7000 supports configuration synchronization (also called standalone configuration synchronization) for two FortiGate-7000s. Configuration synchronization means that most configuration changes made to one of the FortiGate-7000s are automatically synchronized to the other one.

For details about standalone configuration synchronization for FortiOS 6.0, see: [Standalone configuration sync](#).

Use the following command on both FortiGate-7000s to enable configuration synchronization:

```
config system ha
    set standalone-config-sync enable
end
```

In addition to enabling configuration synchronization, you must set up HA heartbeat connections between the FortiGate-7000s using the 1-M1, 1-M2, 2-M1, and 2-M2 interfaces. One HA heartbeat connection is required, two are recommended. Use the following command to enable heartbeat configuration for the 1-M1 and 1-M2 interfaces. This command gives both heartbeat interfaces the same priority. You can choose to select different priorities for each heartbeat interface:

```
config system ha
    set hbdev 1-M1 50 1-M2 50
end
```

When you enable configuration synchronization, configure and connect the heartbeat devices, FGCP primary unit selection criteria selects a config sync primary (or master) FortiGate-7000. Normally, the FortiGate-7000 with the highest serial number becomes the config sync primary and the other FortiGate-7000 becomes the config sync secondary.

All configuration changes that you make to the primary are synchronized to the secondary. To avoid synchronization problems, Fortinet recommends making all configuration changes to the primary.



See [Limitations on page 126](#) for a list of limitations of the configuration synchronization feature. Fortinet recommends disabling configuration synchronization once the configurations of the FortiGate-7000s have been synchronized.

Config sync primary FortiGate-7000 selection

You can use device priority to select one of the FortiGate-7000s to become the config sync primary. For example, the following command enables configuration synchronization and sets a higher device priority than the default of 128 to make sure that this FortiGate-7000 becomes the primary.

```
config system ha
    set standalone-config-sync enable
    set priority 250
end
```

Settings that are not synchronized

Configuration synchronization does not synchronize settings that identify the FortiGate-7000 to the network. The following settings are not synchronized:

- Transparent mode management IPv4 and IPv6 IP addresses and default gateways.
- All `config system cluster-sync` settings.
- All `config system interface` settings except `vdom`, `vlanid`, `type` and `interface`.
- All `config firewall sniffer` settings.
- All router BFD and BFD6 settings.
- The following BGP settings: `as`, `router-id`, `aggregate-address`, `aggregate-address6`, `neighbor-group`, `neighbor`, `network`, and `network6`.
- The following OSPF settings: `router-id`, `area`, `ospf-interface`, `network`, `neighbor`, and `summary-address`.
- The following OSPF6 settings: `router-id`, `area`, and `ospf6-interface`.
- All RIP settings.
- All policy routing settings.
- All static routing settings.

Limitations

When configuration synchronization is enabled, there are some limitations, including but not limited to the following:

- Configuration synchronization does not support graceful HA firmware upgrades. If you upgrade the firmware of the primary, the secondary also upgrades at the same time, disrupting network traffic. You can avoid traffic interruptions by disabling configuration synchronization and upgrading the firmware of each FortiGate-7000 separately.
- The configuration settings that are synchronized might not match your requirements. The current design and implementation of configuration synchronization is based on requirements from specific customers and might not work for your implementation.
- It can be difficult to control which FortiGate-7000 becomes the config sync primary and the config sync primary can dynamically change without notice. This could result in accidentally changing the configuration of the secondary or overwriting the configuration of the intended primary.

FortiGate-7000 VRRP HA

FortiGate-7000 supports the Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol (VRRP), allowing you to configure VRRP HA between FortiGate-7000 data interfaces. You can also add a FortiGate-7000 data interface to a VRRP domain with other VRRP routers.

To set up a FortiGate-7000 VRRP to provide HA for internet connectivity:

1. Add a virtual VRRP router to the internal interface to the FortiGate-7000(s) and routers to be in the VRRP domain.
2. Set the VRRP IP address of the domain to the internal network default gateway IP address.
3. Give one of the VRRP domain members the highest priority so it becomes the primary (or master) router and give the others lower priorities so they become backup routers.

During normal operation, the primary VRRP router sends outgoing VRRP routing advertisements. Both the primary and backup VRRP routers listen for incoming VRRP advertisements from other routers in the VRRP domain. If the primary

router fails, the new primary router takes over the role of the default gateway for the internal network and starts sending and receiving VRRP advertisements.

On the GUI you can go to **Network > Interfaces** and right click on the column header and add VRRP to the **Selected Columns** list to see the VRRP status of the data interfaces that are operating as VRRP routers.

For more information about FortiOS VRRP, see [FortiGate Handbook: VRRP](#).

FortiLink support

FortiGate-7000 supports managing FortiSwitch devices over FortiLink. You can manage up to 300 FortiSwitch devices from one FortiGate-7000.

Use the following command to enable Fortilink support on the GUI and in the CLI:

```
config system global
    set switch-controller enable
end
```

Managed FortiSwitch GUI pages appear under the **WiFi & Switch Controller** GUI menu.

A FortiGate-7000 manages one or more FortiSwitches through one active FortiLink. The FortiLink can consist of one physical interface or multiple physical interfaces in a LAG. To set up a FortiGate-7000 interface as a FortiLink, from the GUI go to **Network > Interface**, select an interface, and set the **Addressing mode** to **Dedicated to FortiSwitch**.

You can also use the following CLI command to set the 1-C1 interface to be the FortiLink:

```
config system interface
    edit 1-C1
        set auto-auth-extension-device enable
        set fortilink enable
    end
end
```

You can use any traffic interface as the FortiLink. Using the M1, M2, and management interfaces is not supported.

For limitations on FortiLink support, see [FortiLink support limitations on page 169](#).

For more information about FortiLink support and managing FortiSwitches, see [FortiSwitch devices managed by FortiOS](#).

ICAP support

You can configure your FortiGate-7000 to use Internet Content Adaptation Protocol (ICAP) to offload processing that would normally take place on the FortiGate-7000 to a separate server specifically set up for the required specialized processing.

ICAP servers are focused on a specific function, for example:

- Ad insertion
- Virus scanning
- Content translation
- HTTP header or URL manipulation
- Language translation
- Content filtering

FortiGate-7000 supports ICAP without any special configuration. This includes using ICAP to offload decrypted SSL traffic to an ICAP server. FortiOS decrypts the content stream before forwarding it to the ICAP server.

For more information about FortiOS support for ICAP, see [ICAP support](#).

Example ICAP configuration

ICAP is available for VDOMs operating in proxy mode. You can enable proxy mode from the **Global** GUI by going to **System > VDOM**, editing the VDOM for which to configure ICAP, and setting **Inspection Mode** to **Proxy**.

Then go to the VDOM, and go to **System > Feature Visibility** and enable **ICAP**.

From the CLI you can edit the VDOM, enable proxy inspection mode and enable ICAP. You can only enable ICAP from `config system settings` if proxy mode is already enabled.

```
config vdom
  edit VDOM-2
    config system settings
      set inspection-mode proxy
    end
    config system settings
      set gui-icap enable
    end
```

From the GUI you can add an ICAP profile by going to **Security Profiles > ICAP** and selecting **Create New** to create a new ICAP profile.

From the CLI you can use the following command to create an ICAP profile:

```
config icap profile
  edit "default"
  next
  edit "icap-test-profile"
    set request enable
    set response enable
    set request-server "icap-test"
    set response-server "icap-test"
    set request-failure bypass
    set response-failure bypass
    set request-path "echo"
    set response-path "echo"
  end
```

From the GUI you can add an ICAP serve by going to **Security Profiles > ICAP Servers** and selecting **Create New** to created a new ICAP server.

From the CLI you can use the following command to create an ICAP server:

```
config icap server
  edit "icap-test"
    set ip-address 10.98.0.88
    set max-connections 1000
  end
```

Then create a firewall policy for the traffic to be sent to the ICAP server and include the ICAP profile.

```
config firewall policy
  edit 4
    set name "any-any"
    set uuid f4b612d0-2300-51e8-f15f-507d96056a96
    set srcintf <interface> <interface>
    set dstintf <interface> <interface>
    set srcaddr "all"
    set dstaddr "all"
    set action accept
```

```

set schedule "always"
set service "ALL"
set utm-status enable
set logtraffic all
set av-profile "default"
set icap-profile "icap-test-profile"
set profile-protocol-options "default"
set ssl-ssh-profile "deep-inspection"
end

```

SSL mirroring support

You can configure your FortiGate-7000 to "mirror" or send a copy of traffic decrypted by SSL inspection to one or more interfaces so that the traffic can be collected by a raw packet capture tool for archiving or analysis.



Decryption, storage, inspection, and use of decrypted content is subject to local privacy rules. Use of these features could enable malicious users with administrative access to your FortiGate to harvest sensitive information submitted using an encrypted channel.

For more information about FortiOS support for SSL mirroring, see [Mirroring SSL inspected traffic](#),

Example SSL mirroring configuration

SSL mirroring is available for VDOMs operating in flow mode. You can enable flow mode from the **Global** GUI by going to **System > VDOM**, editing the VDOM for which to configure SSL mirroring, and setting **Inspection Mode** to **Flow-based**.

From the CLI you can edit the VDOM and enable flow inspection mode.

```

config vdom
  edit mirror-vdom
    config system settings
      set inspection-mode flow
    end
end

```

To enable SSL mirroring, add a firewall policy to accept the traffic that you want to be mirrored. In the policy, enable the **SSL-mirror** option and set **ssl-mirror-intf** to the interface to which to send decrypted packets.

```

config firewall policy
  edit 4
    set name "ssl-mirror-example"
    set uuid f4b612d0-2300-51e8-f15f-507d96056a96
    set srcintf <interface>
    set dstintf <interface>
    set srcaddr "all"
    set dstaddr "all"
    set action accept
    set schedule "always"
    set service "ALL"
    set utm-status enable
    set logtraffic all
    set ssl-mirror enable
  end
end

```

```
set ssl-mirror-intf <interface>
set ips-sensor "default"
set application-list "default"
set profile-protocol-options "default"
set ssl-ssh-profile "deep-inspection"
end
```

You can use the following command from an FPM CLI to verify the mirrored traffic:

```
diagnose sniffer packet <interface> 'port 443' -c 50
interfaces=[1-C1/7]
filters=[port 443]
pcap_lookupnet: <interface>: no IPv4 address assigned
0.440714 8.1.1.69.18478 -> 9.2.1.130.443: syn 582300852
0.440729 9.2.1.130.443 -> 8.1.1.69.18478: syn 3198605956 ack 582300853
0.440733 8.1.1.69.18478 -> 9.2.1.130.443: ack 3198605957
0.440738 8.1.1.69.18478 -> 9.2.1.130.443: psh 582300853 ack 3198605957
0.441450 9.2.1.130.443 -> 8.1.1.69.18478: psh 3198605957 ack 582301211
0.441535 9.2.1.130.443 -> 8.1.1.69.18478: psh 3198607351 ack 582301211
0.441597 9.2.1.130.443 -> 8.1.1.69.18478: psh 3198608747 ack 582301211
0.441636 9.2.1.130.443 -> 8.1.1.69.18478: psh 3198610143 ack 582301211
0.441664 9.2.1.130.443 -> 8.1.1.69.18478: psh 3198611539 ack 582301211
0.441689 9.2.1.130.443 -> 8.1.1.69.18478: psh 3198612935 ack 582301211
0.441715 9.2.1.130.443 -> 8.1.1.69.18478: psh 3198614331 ack 582301211
0.441739 9.2.1.130.443 -> 8.1.1.69.18478: psh 3198615727 ack 582301211
0.441764 9.2.1.130.443 -> 8.1.1.69.18478: psh 3198617123 ack 582301211
```

FortiGate-7000 v6.0.14 special features and limitations

This section describes special features and limitations for FortiGate-7000 v6.0.14.

Managing the FortiGate-7000

By default the MGMT1 to MGMT4 interfaces of the FIMs in slot 1 and slot 2 are in a single static aggregate interface named mgmt with IP address 192.168.1.99. You manage the FortiGate-7000 by connecting any one of these eight interfaces to your network, opening a web browser and browsing to the management IP address. For a factory default configuration, browse to <https://192.168.1.99>.



The FortiGate-7030E has one FIM and the MGMT1 to MGMT4 interfaces of that module are the only interfaces in the aggregate interface.

Default management VDOM

By default the FortiGate-7000 configuration includes a management VDOM named mgmt-vdom. For the FortiGate-7000 system to operate normally you should not change the configuration of this VDOM and this VDOM should always be the management VDOM. You should also not add or remove interfaces from this VDOM.

You have full control over the configurations of other FortiGate-7000 VDOMs.

Default Security Fabric configuration



The FortiGate-7000 uses the Fortinet Security Fabric for communication and synchronization between the FIMs and the FPMs and for normal GUI operation. By default, the Security Fabric is enabled and must remain enabled for normal operation.

Changing the default Security Fabric configuration could disrupt communication and affect system performance.

You can no longer change the `status` to `disable`.

Default Security Fabric configuration:

```
config system csf
  set status enable
  set configuration-sync local
  set management-ip 0.0.0.0
  set management-port 0
end
```


For the FortiGate-7000 to operate normally, you must not change the Security Fabric configuration.

Maximum number of LAGs and interfaces per LAG

FortiGate-7000 systems support up to 16 link aggregation groups (LAGs). This includes both normal link aggregation groups and redundant interfaces and including the redundant interface that contains the mgmt1 to mgmt4 management interfaces. A FortiGate-7000 LAG can include up to 20 interfaces.

Firewall

TCP sessions with NAT enabled that are expected to be idle for more than the distributed processing normal TCP timer (which is 3605 seconds) should only be distributed to the master FPM using a flow rule. You can configure the distributed normal TCP timer using the following command:

```
config system global
    set dp-tcp-normal-timer <timer>
end
```

UDP sessions with NAT enabled that are expected to be idle for more than the distributed processing normal UDP timer should only be distributed to the primary FPM using a flow rule.

Enhanced MAC (EMAC) VLAN support

FortiOS 6.0.14 for FortiGate-7000 supports the media access control (MAC) virtual local area network (VLAN) feature. EMAC VLANs allow you to configure multiple virtual interfaces with different MAC addresses (and therefore different IP addresses) on a physical interface.

For more information about EMAC VLAN support, see [Enhanced MAC VLANs](#).

Use the following command to configure an EMAC VLAN:

```
config system interface
    edit <interface-name>
        set type emac-vlan
        set vlan-id <VLAN-ID>
        set interface <physical-interface>
    end
```

FortiLink support limitations

The FortiGate-7000 has the following FortiLink support limitations:

- The FIM in slot 1 (FIM-01) must be the primary FIM. FortiLink will not work if FIM-02 is the primary FIM.



In an HA configuration, if the FIM in slot 1 of the primary FortiGate-7000 fails, the secondary FortiGate-7000 becomes the new primary FortiGate-7000 with a functioning FIM in slot 1 and FortiLink support continues after the failover.

- FortiGate-7000 for FortiOS 6.0.14 does not support upgrading managed FortiSwitch firmware from the **FortiOS Managed FortiSwitch GUI** page. Instead you must use the FortiGate-7000 CLI or log into the managed FortiSwitch to upgrade managed FortiSwitch firmware.
- You can use any FortiGate-7000 interface as the FortiLink. However, using the M1, M2, and management interfaces is not recommended.

IP multicast

IPv4 and IPv6 Multicast traffic is only sent to the primary FPM (usually the FPM in slot 3). This is controlled by the following configuration:

```
config load-balance flow-rule
  edit 15
    set status enable
    set vlan 0
    set ether-type ipv4
    set src-addr-ipv4 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0
    set dst-addr-ipv4 224.0.0.0 240.0.0.0
    set protocol any
    set action forward
    set forward-slot master
    set priority 5
    set comment "ipv4 multicast"
  next
  edit 16
    set status enable
    set vlan 0
    set ether-type ipv6
    set src-addr-ipv6 ::/0
    set dst-addr-ipv6 ff00::/8
    set protocol any
    set action forward
    set forward-slot master
    set priority 5
    set comment "ipv6 multicast"
  end
end
```

High availability

Only the M1 and M2 interfaces are used for the HA heartbeat communication. For information on how to set up HA heartbeat communication using the M1 and M2 interfaces, see [Connect the M1 and M2 interfaces for HA heartbeat](#)

[communication on page 90](#)

The following FortiOS HA features are not supported or are supported differently by FortiGate-7000 v6.0.14:

- Active-active HA is not supported.
- The range for the HA `group-id` is 0 to 31.
- Failover logic for FortiGate-7000 HA is not the same as FGCP for other FortiGate clusters.
- HA heartbeat configuration is specific to FortiGate-7000 systems and differs from standard HA.
- FortiGate-7000 HA does not support the `route-wait` and `route-hold` options for tuning route synchronization between FortiGate-7000s.
- VLAN monitoring using the `config system ha-monitor` command is not supported.

Shelf manager module

It is not possible to access SMM CLI using Telnet or SSH. Only console access is supported using the chassis front panel console ports as described in the FortiGate-7000 system guide.

For monitoring purpose, IPMI over IP is supported on SMM Ethernet ports. See your FortiGate-7000 system guide for details.

FortiOS features not supported by FortiGate-7000 v6.0.14

The following mainstream FortiOS 6.0.14 features are not supported by the FortiGate-7000 v6.0.14:

- HA dedicated management interfaces
- Hardware switch
- WiFi controller
- IPv4 over IPv6, IPv6 over IPv4, IPv6 over IPv6 features
- De-authorizing users from the GUI is not fully supported and de-authorizing a user may not be fully synchronized to all FIM and FPMs or to both FortiGate-7000s in an HA configuration.
- GRE tunneling is only supported after creating a load balance flow rule, for example:

```
config load-balance flow-rule
  edit 0
    set status enable
    set vlan 0
    set ether-type ip
    set protocol gre
    set action forward
    set forward-slot master
    set priority 3
  end
```

- Hard disk features including, WAN optimization, web caching, explicit proxy content caching, disk logging, and GUI-based packet sniffing.
- The FortiGate-7000 platform only supports quarantining files to FortiAnalyzer.
- Log messages should be sent only using the management aggregate interface
- The FortiGate-7000 does not support configuring dedicated management interfaces using the `config system dedicated-mgmt` command or by enabling the `dedicated-to management` interface option. The purpose of

the dedicated management interface feature is to add a routing table just for management connections. This functionality is supported by the FortiGate-7000 management VDOM (mgmt-vdom) that has its own routing table and contains all of the FortiGate-7000 management interfaces.

- Enabling the system settings option `tcp-session-without-syn` and configuring a firewall policy to accept sessions without syn packets allows FortiOS to add entries to its session table for sessions that do not include SYN packets. These sessions can only be load balanced by the DP processor if the `dp-load-distribution-method` is set to `src-dst-ip-sport-dport` (default) or `src-dst-ip`. If any other load distribution method is used, the sessions will be dropped. As well, the DP processor cannot load balance these sessions if they are accepted by a firewall policy with NAT enabled.

IPsec VPN tunnels terminated by the FortiGate-7000

For a list of IPsec VPN features not supported by FortiOS 6.0.14 FortiGate-7000 IPsec VPN, see [FortiGate-7000 IPsec VPN on page 82](#).

SSL VPN

Sending all SSL VPN sessions to the primary FPM is recommended. You can do this by:

- Creating a flow rule that sends all sessions that use the SSL VPN destination port and IP address to the primary FPM.
- Creating flow rules that send all sessions that use the SSL VPN IP pool addresses to the primary FPM.

For more information about FortiGate-7000 SSL VPN support, see [SSL VPN load balancing on page 71](#).

Traffic shaping and DDoS policies

Each FPM applies traffic shaping and DDoS quotas independently. Because of load-balancing, this may allow more traffic than expected.

FortiGuard web filtering and spam filtering queries

The FortiGate-7000 sends all FortiGuard web filtering and spam filtering rating queries through a management interface from the management VDOM.

Web filtering quotas

On a VDOM operating with the **Inspection Mode** set to **Proxy**, you can go to **Security Profiles > Web Filter** and set up **Category Usage Quotas**. Each FPM has its own quota, and the FortiGate-7000 applies quotas per FPM and not per the

entire FortiGate-7000 system. This could result in quotas being exceeded if sessions for the same user are processed by different FPMs.

Log messages include a slot field

An additional "slot" field has been added to log messages to identify the FPM that generated the log.

FortiOS Carrier

You have to apply a FortiOS Carrier license separately to each FIM and FPM to license a FortiGate-7000 for FortiOS Carrier.

Special notice for new deployment connectivity testing

Only the primary FPM can successfully ping external IP addresses. During a new deployment, while performing connectivity testing from the Fortigate-7000, make sure to run `execute ping` tests from the primary FPM CLI.

Display the process name associated with a process ID

You can use the following command to display the process name associated with a process ID (PID):

```
diagnose sys process nameof <pid>
```

Where <pid> is the process ID.

FortiGate-7000 v6.0.13 special features and limitations

This section describes special features and limitations for FortiGate-7000 v6.0.13.

Managing the FortiGate-7000

By default the MGMT1 to MGMT4 interfaces of the FIMs in slot 1 and slot 2 are in a single static aggregate interface named mgmt with IP address 192.168.1.99. You manage the FortiGate-7000 by connecting any one of these eight interfaces to your network, opening a web browser and browsing to the management IP address. For a factory default configuration, browse to <https://192.168.1.99>.



The FortiGate-7030E has one FIM and the MGMT1 to MGMT4 interfaces of that module are the only interfaces in the aggregate interface.

Default management VDOM

By default the FortiGate-7000 configuration includes a management VDOM named mgmt-vdom. For the FortiGate-7000 system to operate normally you should not change the configuration of this VDOM and this VDOM should always be the management VDOM. You should also not add or remove interfaces from this VDOM.

You have full control over the configurations of other FortiGate-7000 VDOMs.

Default Security Fabric configuration



The FortiGate-7000 uses the Fortinet Security Fabric for communication and synchronization between the FIMs and the FPMs and for normal GUI operation. By default, the Security Fabric is enabled and must remain enabled for normal operation.

Changing the default Security Fabric configuration could disrupt communication and affect system performance.

You can no longer change the `status` to `disable`.

Default Security Fabric configuration:

```
config system csf
  set status enable
  set configuration-sync local
  set management-ip 0.0.0.0
  set management-port 0
end
```

For the FortiGate-7000 to operate normally, you must not change the Security Fabric configuration.

Maximum number of LAGs and interfaces per LAG

FortiGate-7000 systems support up to 16 link aggregation groups (LAGs). This includes both normal link aggregation groups and redundant interfaces and including the redundant interface that contains the mgmt1 to mgmt4 management interfaces. A FortiGate-7000 LAG can include up to 20 interfaces.

Firewall

TCP sessions with NAT enabled that are expected to be idle for more than the distributed processing normal TCP timer (which is 3605 seconds) should only be distributed to the master FPM using a flow rule. You can configure the distributed normal TCP timer using the following command:

```
config system global
    set dp-tcp-normal-timer <timer>
end
```

UDP sessions with NAT enabled that are expected to be idle for more than the distributed processing normal UDP timer should only be distributed to the primary FPM using a flow rule.

Enhanced MAC (EMAC) VLAN support

FortiOS 6.0.13 for FortiGate-7000 supports the media access control (MAC) virtual local area network (VLAN) feature. EMAC VLANs allow you to configure multiple virtual interfaces with different MAC addresses (and therefore different IP addresses) on a physical interface.

For more information about EMAC VLAN support, see [Enhanced MAC VLANs](#).

Use the following command to configure an EMAC VLAN:

```
config system interface
    edit <interface-name>
        set type emac-vlan
        set vlan-id <VLAN-ID>
        set interface <physical-interface>
    end
```

FortiLink support limitations

The FortiGate-7000 has the following FortiLink support limitations:

- The FIM in slot 1 (FIM-01) must be the primary FIM. FortiLink will not work if FIM-02 is the primary FIM.



In an HA configuration, if the FIM in slot 1 of the primary FortiGate-7000 fails, the secondary FortiGate-7000 becomes the new primary FortiGate-7000 with a functioning FIM in slot 1 and FortiLink support continues after the failover.

- FortiGate-7000 for FortiOS 6.0.13 does not support upgrading managed FortiSwitch firmware from the **FortiOS Managed FortiSwitch GUI** page. Instead you must use the FortiGate-7000 CLI or log into the managed FortiSwitch to upgrade managed FortiSwitch firmware.
- You can use any FortiGate-7000 interface as the FortiLink. However, using the M1, M2, and management interfaces is not recommended.

IP multicast

IPv4 and IPv6 Multicast traffic is only sent to the primary FPM (usually the FPM in slot 3). This is controlled by the following configuration:

```
config load-balance flow-rule
  edit 15
    set status enable
    set vlan 0
    set ether-type ipv4
    set src-addr-ipv4 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0
    set dst-addr-ipv4 224.0.0.0 240.0.0.0
    set protocol any
    set action forward
    set forward-slot master
    set priority 5
    set comment "ipv4 multicast"
  next
  edit 16
    set status enable
    set vlan 0
    set ether-type ipv6
    set src-addr-ipv6 ::/0
    set dst-addr-ipv6 ff00::/8
    set protocol any
    set action forward
    set forward-slot master
    set priority 5
    set comment "ipv6 multicast"
  end
end
```

High availability

Only the M1 and M2 interfaces are used for the HA heartbeat communication. For information on how to set up HA heartbeat communication using the M1 and M2 interfaces, see [Connect the M1 and M2 interfaces for HA heartbeat](#)

[communication on page 90](#)

The following FortiOS HA features are not supported or are supported differently by FortiGate-7000 v6.0.13:

- Active-active HA is not supported.
- The range for the HA `group-id` is 0 to 31.
- Failover logic for FortiGate-7000 HA is not the same as FGCP for other FortiGate clusters.
- HA heartbeat configuration is specific to FortiGate-7000 systems and differs from standard HA.
- FortiGate-7000 HA does not support the `route-wait` and `route-hold` options for tuning route synchronization between FortiGate-7000s.
- VLAN monitoring using the `config system ha-monitor` command is not supported.

Shelf manager module

It is not possible to access SMM CLI using Telnet or SSH. Only console access is supported using the chassis front panel console ports as described in the FortiGate-7000 system guide.

For monitoring purpose, IPMI over IP is supported on SMM Ethernet ports. See your FortiGate-7000 system guide for details.

FortiOS features not supported by FortiGate-7000 v6.0.13

The following mainstream FortiOS 6.0.13 features are not supported by the FortiGate-7000 v6.0.13:

- HA dedicated management interfaces
- Hardware switch
- WiFi controller
- IPv4 over IPv6, IPv6 over IPv4, IPv6 over IPv6 features
- De-authorizing users from the GUI is not fully supported and de-authorizing a user may not be fully synchronized to all FIM and FPMs or to both FortiGate-7000s in an HA configuration.
- GRE tunneling is only supported after creating a load balance flow rule, for example:

```
config load-balance flow-rule
  edit 0
    set status enable
    set vlan 0
    set ether-type ip
    set protocol gre
    set action forward
    set forward-slot master
    set priority 3
  end
```

- Hard disk features including, WAN optimization, web caching, explicit proxy content caching, disk logging, and GUI-based packet sniffing.
- The FortiGate-7000 platform only supports quarantining files to FortiAnalyzer.
- Log messages should be sent only using the management aggregate interface
- The FortiGate-7000 does not support configuring dedicated management interfaces using the `config system dedicated-mgmt` command or by enabling the `dedicated-to management` interface option. The purpose of

the dedicated management interface feature is to add a routing table just for management connections. This functionality is supported by the FortiGate-7000 management VDOM (mgmt-vdom) that has its own routing table and contains all of the FortiGate-7000 management interfaces.

- Enabling the system settings option `tcp-session-without-syn` and configuring a firewall policy to accept sessions without syn packets allows FortiOS to add entries to its session table for sessions that do not include SYN packets. These sessions can only be load balanced by the DP processor if the `dp-load-distribution-method` is set to `src-dst-ip-sport-dport` (default) or `src-dst-ip`. If any other load distribution method is used, the sessions will be dropped. As well, the DP processor cannot load balance these sessions if they are accepted by a firewall policy with NAT enabled.

IPsec VPN tunnels terminated by the FortiGate-7000

For a list of IPsec VPN features not supported by FortiOS 6.0.13 FortiGate-7000 IPsec VPN, see [FortiGate-7000 IPsec VPN on page 82](#).

SSL VPN

Sending all SSL VPN sessions to the primary FPM is recommended. You can do this by:

- Creating a flow rule that sends all sessions that use the SSL VPN destination port and IP address to the primary FPM.
- Creating flow rules that send all sessions that use the SSL VPN IP pool addresses to the primary FPM.

For more information about FortiGate-7000 SSL VPN support, see [SSL VPN load balancing on page 71](#).

Traffic shaping and DDoS policies

Each FPM applies traffic shaping and DDoS quotas independently. Because of load-balancing, this may allow more traffic than expected.

FortiGuard web filtering and spam filtering queries

The FortiGate-7000 sends all FortiGuard web filtering and spam filtering rating queries through a management interface from the management VDOM.

Web filtering quotas

On a VDOM operating with the **Inspection Mode** set to **Proxy**, you can go to **Security Profiles > Web Filter** and set up **Category Usage Quotas**. Each FPM has its own quota, and the FortiGate-7000 applies quotas per FPM and not per the

entire FortiGate-7000 system. This could result in quotas being exceeded if sessions for the same user are processed by different FPMs.

Log messages include a slot field

An additional "slot" field has been added to log messages to identify the FPM that generated the log.

FortiOS Carrier

You have to apply a FortiOS Carrier license separately to each FIM and FPM to license a FortiGate-7000 for FortiOS Carrier.

Special notice for new deployment connectivity testing

Only the primary FPM can successfully ping external IP addresses. During a new deployment, while performing connectivity testing from the Fortigate-7000, make sure to run `execute ping` tests from the primary FPM CLI.

Display the process name associated with a process ID

You can use the following command to display the process name associated with a process ID (PID):

```
diagnose sys process nameof <pid>
```

Where <pid> is the process ID.

FortiGate-7000 v6.0.12 special features and limitations

This section describes special features and limitations for FortiGate-7000 v6.0.12.

Managing the FortiGate-7000

By default the MGMT1 to MGMT4 interfaces of the FIMs in slot 1 and slot 2 are in a single static aggregate interface named mgmt with IP address 192.168.1.99. You manage the FortiGate-7000 by connecting any one of these eight interfaces to your network, opening a web browser and browsing to the management IP address. For a factory default configuration, browse to <https://192.168.1.99>.



The FortiGate-7030E has one FIM and the MGMT1 to MGMT4 interfaces of that module are the only interfaces in the aggregate interface.

Default management VDOM

By default the FortiGate-7000 configuration includes a management VDOM named mgmt-vdom. For the FortiGate-7000 system to operate normally you should not change the configuration of this VDOM and this VDOM should always be the management VDOM. You should also not add or remove interfaces from this VDOM.

You have full control over the configurations of other FortiGate-7000 VDOMs.

Default Security Fabric configuration



The FortiGate-7000 uses the Fortinet Security Fabric for communication and synchronization between the FIMs and the FPMs and for normal GUI operation. By default, the Security Fabric is enabled and must remain enabled for normal operation.

Changing the default Security Fabric configuration could disrupt communication and affect system performance.

You can no longer change the `status` to `disable`.

Default Security Fabric configuration:

```
config system csf
  set status enable
  set configuration-sync local
  set management-ip 0.0.0.0
  set management-port 0
end
```

For the FortiGate-7000 to operate normally, you must not change the Security Fabric configuration.

Maximum number of LAGs and interfaces per LAG

FortiGate-7000 systems support up to 16 link aggregation groups (LAGs). This includes both normal link aggregation groups and redundant interfaces and including the redundant interface that contains the mgmt1 to mgmt4 management interfaces. A FortiGate-7000 LAG can include up to 20 interfaces.

Firewall

TCP sessions with NAT enabled that are expected to be idle for more than the distributed processing normal TCP timer (which is 3605 seconds) should only be distributed to the master FPM using a flow rule. You can configure the distributed normal TCP timer using the following command:

```
config system global
    set dp-tcp-normal-timer <timer>
end
```

UDP sessions with NAT enabled that are expected to be idle for more than the distributed processing normal UDP timer should only be distributed to the primary FPM using a flow rule.

Enhanced MAC (EMAC) VLAN support

FortiOS 6.0.12 for FortiGate-7000 supports the media access control (MAC) virtual local area network (VLAN) feature. EMAC VLANs allow you to configure multiple virtual interfaces with different MAC addresses (and therefore different IP addresses) on a physical interface.

For more information about EMAC VLAN support, see [Enhanced MAC VLANs](#).

Use the following command to configure an EMAC VLAN:

```
config system interface
    edit <interface-name>
        set type emac-vlan
        set vlan-id <VLAN-ID>
        set interface <physical-interface>
    end
```

FortiLink support limitations

The FortiGate-7000 has the following FortiLink support limitations:

- The FIM in slot 1 (FIM-01) must be the primary FIM. FortiLink will not work if FIM-02 is the primary FIM.



In an HA configuration, if the FIM in slot 1 of the primary FortiGate-7000 fails, the secondary FortiGate-7000 becomes the new primary FortiGate-7000 with a functioning FIM in slot 1 and FortiLink support continues after the failover.

- FortiGate-7000 for FortiOS 6.0.12 does not support upgrading managed FortiSwitch firmware from the **FortiOS Managed FortiSwitch GUI** page. Instead you must use the FortiGate-7000 CLI or log into the managed FortiSwitch to upgrade managed FortiSwitch firmware.
- You can use any FortiGate-7000 interface as the FortiLink. However, using the M1, M2, and management interfaces is not recommended.

IP multicast

IPv4 and IPv6 Multicast traffic is only sent to the primary FPM (usually the FPM in slot 3). This is controlled by the following configuration:

```
config load-balance flow-rule
  edit 15
    set status enable
    set vlan 0
    set ether-type ipv4
    set src-addr-ipv4 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0
    set dst-addr-ipv4 224.0.0.0 240.0.0.0
    set protocol any
    set action forward
    set forward-slot master
    set priority 5
    set comment "ipv4 multicast"
  next
  edit 16
    set status enable
    set vlan 0
    set ether-type ipv6
    set src-addr-ipv6 ::/0
    set dst-addr-ipv6 ff00::/8
    set protocol any
    set action forward
    set forward-slot master
    set priority 5
    set comment "ipv6 multicast"
  end
end
```

High availability

Only the M1 and M2 interfaces are used for the HA heartbeat communication. For information on how to set up HA heartbeat communication using the M1 and M2 interfaces, see [Connect the M1 and M2 interfaces for HA heartbeat](#)

[communication on page 90](#)

The following FortiOS HA features are not supported or are supported differently by FortiGate-7000 v6.0.12:

- Active-active HA is not supported.
- The range for the HA `group-id` is 0 to 31.
- Failover logic for FortiGate-7000 HA is not the same as FGCP for other FortiGate clusters.
- HA heartbeat configuration is specific to FortiGate-7000 systems and differs from standard HA.
- FortiGate-7000 HA does not support the `route-wait` and `route-hold` options for tuning route synchronization between FortiGate-7000s.
- VLAN monitoring using the `config system ha-monitor` command is not supported.

Shelf manager module

It is not possible to access SMM CLI using Telnet or SSH. Only console access is supported using the chassis front panel console ports as described in the FortiGate-7000 system guide.

For monitoring purpose, IPMI over IP is supported on SMM Ethernet ports. See your FortiGate-7000 system guide for details.

FortiOS features not supported by FortiGate-7000 v6.0.12

The following mainstream FortiOS 6.0.12 features are not supported by the FortiGate-7000 v6.0.12:

- HA dedicated management interfaces
- Hardware switch
- WiFi controller
- IPv4 over IPv6, IPv6 over IPv4, IPv6 over IPv6 features
- De-authorizing users from the GUI is not fully supported and de-authorizing a user may not be fully synchronized to all FIM and FPMs or to both FortiGate-7000s in an HA configuration.
- GRE tunneling is only supported after creating a load balance flow rule, for example:

```
config load-balance flow-rule
  edit 0
    set status enable
    set vlan 0
    set ether-type ip
    set protocol gre
    set action forward
    set forward-slot master
    set priority 3
  end
```

- Hard disk features including, WAN optimization, web caching, explicit proxy content caching, disk logging, and GUI-based packet sniffing.
- The FortiGate-7000 platform only supports quarantining files to FortiAnalyzer.
- Log messages should be sent only using the management aggregate interface
- The FortiGate-7000 does not support configuring dedicated management interfaces using the `config system dedicated-mgmt` command or by enabling the `dedicated-to management` interface option. The purpose of

the dedicated management interface feature is to add a routing table just for management connections. This functionality is supported by the FortiGate-7000 management VDOM (mgmt-vdom) that has its own routing table and contains all of the FortiGate-7000 management interfaces.

- Enabling the system settings option `tcp-session-without-syn` and configuring a firewall policy to accept sessions without syn packets allows FortiOS to add entries to its session table for sessions that do not include SYN packets. These sessions can only be load balanced by the DP processor if the `dp-load-distribution-method` is set to `src-dst-ip-sport-dport` (default) or `src-dst-ip`. If any other load distribution method is used, the sessions will be dropped. As well, the DP processor cannot load balance these sessions if they are accepted by a firewall policy with NAT enabled.

IPsec VPN tunnels terminated by the FortiGate-7000

For a list of IPsec VPN features not supported by FortiOS 6.0.12 FortiGate-7000 IPsec VPN, see [FortiGate-7000 IPsec VPN on page 82](#).

SSL VPN

Sending all SSL VPN sessions to the primary FPM is recommended. You can do this by:

- Creating a flow rule that sends all sessions that use the SSL VPN destination port and IP address to the primary FPM.
- Creating flow rules that send all sessions that use the SSL VPN IP pool addresses to the primary FPM.

For more information about FortiGate-7000 SSL VPN support, see [SSL VPN load balancing on page 71](#).

Traffic shaping and DDoS policies

Each FPM applies traffic shaping and DDoS quotas independently. Because of load-balancing, this may allow more traffic than expected.

FortiGuard web filtering and spam filtering queries

The FortiGate-7000 sends all FortiGuard web filtering and spam filtering rating queries through a management interface from the management VDOM.

Web filtering quotas

On a VDOM operating with the **Inspection Mode** set to **Proxy**, you can go to **Security Profiles > Web Filter** and set up **Category Usage Quotas**. Each FPM has its own quota, and the FortiGate-7000 applies quotas per FPM and not per the

entire FortiGate-7000 system. This could result in quotas being exceeded if sessions for the same user are processed by different FPMs.

Log messages include a slot field

An additional "slot" field has been added to log messages to identify the FPM that generated the log.

FortiOS Carrier

You have to apply a FortiOS Carrier license separately to each FIM and FPM to license a FortiGate-7000 for FortiOS Carrier.

Special notice for new deployment connectivity testing

Only the primary FPM can successfully ping external IP addresses. During a new deployment, while performing connectivity testing from the Fortigate-7000, make sure to run `execute ping` tests from the primary FPM CLI.

Display the process name associated with a process ID

You can use the following command to display the process name associated with a process ID (PID):

```
diagnose sys process nameof <pid>
```

Where <pid> is the process ID.

FortiGate-7000 v6.0.10 special features and limitations

This section describes special features and limitations for FortiGate-7000 v6.0.10.

Managing the FortiGate-7000

By default the MGMT1 to MGMT4 interfaces of the FIMs in slot 1 and slot 2 are in a single static aggregate interface named mgmt with IP address 192.168.1.99. You manage the FortiGate-7000 by connecting any one of these eight interfaces to your network, opening a web browser and browsing to the management IP address. For a factory default configuration, browse to <https://192.168.1.99>.



The FortiGate-7030E has one FIM and the MGMT1 to MGMT4 interfaces of that module are the only interfaces in the aggregate interface.

Default management VDOM

By default the FortiGate-7000 configuration includes a management VDOM named mgmt-vdom. For the FortiGate-7000 system to operate normally you should not change the configuration of this VDOM and this VDOM should always be the management VDOM. You should also not add or remove interfaces from this VDOM.

You have full control over the configurations of other FortiGate-7000 VDOMs.

Default Security Fabric configuration



The FortiGate-7000 uses the Fortinet Security Fabric for communication and synchronization between the FIMs and the FPMs and for normal GUI operation. By default, the Security Fabric is enabled and must remain enabled for normal operation.

Changing the default Security Fabric configuration could disrupt communication and affect system performance.

You can no longer change the `status` to `disable`.

Default Security Fabric configuration:

```
config system csf
  set status enable
  set configuration-sync local
  set management-ip 0.0.0.0
  set management-port 0
end
```

For the FortiGate-7000 to operate normally, you must not change the Security Fabric configuration.

Maximum number of LAGs and interfaces per LAG

FortiGate-7000 systems support up to 16 link aggregation groups (LAGs). This includes both normal link aggregation groups and redundant interfaces and including the redundant interface that contains the mgmt1 to mgmt4 management interfaces. A FortiGate-7000 LAG can include up to 20 interfaces.

Firewall

TCP sessions with NAT enabled that are expected to be idle for more than the distributed processing normal TCP timer (which is 3605 seconds) should only be distributed to the master FPM using a flow rule. You can configure the distributed normal TCP timer using the following command:

```
config system global
    set dp-tcp-normal-timer <timer>
end
```

UDP sessions with NAT enabled that are expected to be idle for more than the distributed processing normal UDP timer should only be distributed to the primary FPM using a flow rule.

Enhanced MAC (EMAC) VLAN support

FortiOS 6.0.10 for FortiGate-7000 supports the media access control (MAC) virtual local area network (VLAN) feature. EMAC VLANs allow you to configure multiple virtual interfaces with different MAC addresses (and therefore different IP addresses) on a physical interface.

For more information about EMAC VLAN support, see [Enhanced MAC VLANs](#).

Use the following command to configure an EMAC VLAN:

```
config system interface
    edit <interface-name>
        set type emac-vlan
        set vlan-id <VLAN-ID>
        set interface <physical-interface>
    end
```

FortiLink support limitations

The FortiGate-7000 has the following FortiLink support limitations:

- The FIM in slot 1 (FIM-01) must be the primary FIM. FortiLink will not work if FIM-02 is the primary FIM.



In an HA configuration, if the FIM in slot 1 of the primary FortiGate-7000 fails, the secondary FortiGate-7000 becomes the new primary FortiGate-7000 with a functioning FIM in slot 1 and FortiLink support continues after the failover.

- FortiGate-7000 for FortiOS 6.0.10 does not support upgrading managed FortiSwitch firmware from the **FortiOS Managed FortiSwitch GUI** page. Instead you must use the FortiGate-7000 CLI or log into the managed FortiSwitch to upgrade managed FortiSwitch firmware.
- You can use any FortiGate-7000 interface as the FortiLink. However, using the M1, M2, and management interfaces is not recommended.

IP multicast

IPv4 and IPv6 Multicast traffic is only sent to the primary FPM (usually the FPM in slot 3). This is controlled by the following configuration:

```
config load-balance flow-rule
  edit 15
    set status enable
    set vlan 0
    set ether-type ipv4
    set src-addr-ipv4 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0
    set dst-addr-ipv4 224.0.0.0 240.0.0.0
    set protocol any
    set action forward
    set forward-slot master
    set priority 5
    set comment "ipv4 multicast"
  next
  edit 16
    set status enable
    set vlan 0
    set ether-type ipv6
    set src-addr-ipv6 ::/0
    set dst-addr-ipv6 ff00::/8
    set protocol any
    set action forward
    set forward-slot master
    set priority 5
    set comment "ipv6 multicast"
  end
end
```

High availability

Only the M1 and M2 interfaces are used for the HA heartbeat communication. For information on how to set up HA heartbeat communication using the M1 and M2 interfaces, see [Connect the M1 and M2 interfaces for HA heartbeat](#)

[communication on page 90](#)

The following FortiOS HA features are not supported or are supported differently by FortiGate-7000 v6.0.10:

- Active-active HA is not supported.
- The range for the HA `group-id` is 0 to 31.
- Failover logic for FortiGate-7000 HA is not the same as FGCP for other FortiGate clusters.
- HA heartbeat configuration is specific to FortiGate-7000 systems and differs from standard HA.
- FortiGate-7000 HA does not support the `route-wait` and `route-hold` options for tuning route synchronization between FortiGate-7000s.
- VLAN monitoring using the `config system ha-monitor` command is not supported.

Shelf manager module

It is not possible to access SMM CLI using Telnet or SSH. Only console access is supported using the chassis front panel console ports as described in the FortiGate-7000 system guide.

For monitoring purpose, IPMI over IP is supported on SMM Ethernet ports. See your FortiGate-7000 system guide for details.

FortiOS features not supported by FortiGate-7000 v6.0.10

The following mainstream FortiOS 6.0.10 features are not supported by the FortiGate-7000 v6.0.10:

- SD-WAN (because of known issues)
- ECMP load balancing is not supported.
- HA dedicated management interfaces
- Hardware switch
- WiFi controller
- IPv4 over IPv6, IPv6 over IPv4, IPv6 over IPv6 features
- De-authorizing users from the GUI is not fully supported and de-authorizing a user may not be fully synchronized to all FIM and FPMs or to both FortiGate-7000s in an HA configuration.
- GRE tunneling is only supported after creating a load balance flow rule, for example:

```
config load-balance flow-rule
  edit 0
    set status enable
    set vlan 0
    set ether-type ip
    set protocol gre
    set action forward
    set forward-slot master
    set priority 3
  end
```

- Hard disk features including, WAN optimization, web caching, explicit proxy content caching, disk logging, and GUI-based packet sniffing.
- The FortiGate-7000 platform only supports quarantining files to FortiAnalyzer.
- Log messages should be sent only using the management aggregate interface

- The FortiGate-7000 does not support configuring dedicated management interfaces using the `config system dedicated-mgmt` command or by enabling the `dedicated-to management` interface option. The purpose of the dedicated management interface feature is to add a routing table just for management connections. This functionality is supported by the FortiGate-7000 management VDOM (mgmt-vdom) that has its own routing table and contains all of the FortiGate-7000 management interfaces.
- Enabling the system settings option `tcp-session-without-syn` and configuring a firewall policy to accept sessions without syn packets allows FortiOS to add entries to its session table for sessions that do not include SYN packets. These sessions can only be load balanced by the DP processor if the `dp-load-distribution-method` is set to `src-dst-ip-sport-dport` (default) or `src-dst-ip`. If any other load distribution method is used, the sessions will be dropped. As well, the DP processor cannot load balance these sessions if they are accepted by a firewall policy with NAT enabled.

IPsec VPN tunnels terminated by the FortiGate-7000

For a list of IPsec VPN features not supported by FortiOS 6.0.10 FortiGate-7000 IPsec VPN, see [FortiGate-7000 IPsec VPN on page 82](#).

SSL VPN

Sending all SSL VPN sessions to the primary FPM is recommended. You can do this by:

- Creating a flow rule that sends all sessions that use the SSL VPN destination port and IP address to the primary FPM.
- Creating flow rules that send all sessions that use the SSL VPN IP pool addresses to the primary FPM.

For more information about FortiGate-7000 SSL VPN support, see [SSL VPN load balancing on page 71](#).

Traffic shaping and DDoS policies

Each FPM applies traffic shaping and DDoS quotas independently. Because of load-balancing, this may allow more traffic than expected.

FortiGuard web filtering and spam filtering queries

The FortiGate-7000 sends all FortiGuard web filtering and spam filtering rating queries through a management interface from the management VDOM.

Web filtering quotas

On a VDOM operating with the **Inspection Mode** set to **Proxy**, you can go to **Security Profiles > Web Filter** and set up **Category Usage Quotas**. Each FPM has its own quota, and the FortiGate-7000 applies quotas per FPM and not per the entire FortiGate-7000 system. This could result in quotas being exceeded if sessions for the same user are processed by different FPMs.

Log messages include a slot field

An additional "slot" field has been added to log messages to identify the FPM that generated the log.

FortiOS Carrier

You have to apply a FortiOS Carrier license separately to each FIM and FPM to license a FortiGate-7000 for FortiOS Carrier.

Special notice for new deployment connectivity testing

Only the primary FPM can successfully ping external IP addresses. During a new deployment, while performing connectivity testing from the Fortigate-7000, make sure to run `execute ping` tests from the primary FPM CLI.

Display the process name associated with a process ID

You can use the following command to display the process name associated with a process ID (PID):

```
diagnose sys process nameof <pid>
```

Where <pid> is the process ID.

FortiGate-7000 v6.0.9 special features and limitations

This section describes special features and limitations for FortiGate-7000 v6.0.9.

Managing the FortiGate-7000

By default the MGMT1 to MGMT4 interfaces of the FIMs in slot 1 and slot 2 are in a single static aggregate interface named mgmt with IP address 192.168.1.99. You manage the FortiGate-7000 by connecting any one of these eight interfaces to your network, opening a web browser and browsing to the management IP address. For a factory default configuration, browse to <https://192.168.1.99>.



The FortiGate-7030E has one FIM and the MGMT1 to MGMT4 interfaces of that module are the only interfaces in the aggregate interface.

Default management VDOM

By default the FortiGate-7000 configuration includes a management VDOM named mgmt-vdom. For the FortiGate-7000 system to operate normally you should not change the configuration of this VDOM and this VDOM should always be the management VDOM. You should also not add or remove interfaces from this VDOM.

You have full control over the configurations of other FortiGate-7000 VDOMs.

Default Security Fabric configuration



The FortiGate-7000 uses the Fortinet Security Fabric for communication and synchronization between the FIMs and the FPMs and for normal GUI operation. By default, the Security Fabric is enabled and must remain enabled for normal operation.

Changing the default Security Fabric configuration could disrupt communication and affect system performance.

As of version 6.0.9 you can no longer change the `status` to `disable`.

Default Security Fabric configuration:

```
config system csf
  set status enable
  set configuration-sync local
  set management-ip 0.0.0.0
  set management-port 0
end
```


For the FortiGate-7000 to operate normally, you must not change the Security Fabric configuration.

Maximum number of LAGs and interfaces per LAG

FortiGate-7000 systems support up to 16 link aggregation groups (LAGs). This includes both normal link aggregation groups and redundant interfaces and including the redundant interface that contains the mgmt1 to mgmt4 management interfaces. A FortiGate-7000 LAG can include up to 20 interfaces.

Firewall

TCP sessions with NAT enabled that are expected to be idle for more than the distributed processing normal TCP timer (which is 3605 seconds) should only be distributed to the master FPM using a flow rule. You can configure the distributed normal TCP timer using the following command:

```
config system global
    set dp-tcp-normal-timer <timer>
end
```

UDP sessions with NAT enabled that are expected to be idle for more than the distributed processing normal UDP timer should only be distributed to the primary FPM using a flow rule.

Enhanced MAC (EMAC) VLAN support

FortiOS 6.0.9 for FortiGate-7000 supports the media access control (MAC) virtual local area network (VLAN) feature. EMAC VLANs allow you to configure multiple virtual interfaces with different MAC addresses (and therefore different IP addresses) on a physical interface.

For more information about EMAC VLAN support, see [Enhanced MAC VLANs](#).

Use the following command to configure an EMAC VLAN:

```
config system interface
    edit <interface-name>
        set type emac-vlan
        set vlan-id <VLAN-ID>
        set interface <physical-interface>
    end
```

FortiLink support limitations

The FortiGate-7000 has the following FortiLink support limitations:

- The FIM in slot 1 (FIM-01) must be the primary FIM. FortiLink will not work if FIM-02 is the primary FIM.



In an HA configuration, if the FIM in slot 1 of the primary FortiGate-7000 fails, the secondary FortiGate-7000 becomes the new primary FortiGate-7000 with a functioning FIM in slot 1 and FortiLink support continues after the failover.

- FortiGate-7000 for FortiOS 6.0.9 does not support upgrading managed FortiSwitch firmware from the **FortiOS Managed FortiSwitch GUI** page. Instead you must use the FortiGate-7000 CLI or log into the managed FortiSwitch to upgrade managed FortiSwitch firmware.
- You can use any FortiGate-7000 interface as the FortiLink. However, using the M1, M2, and management interfaces is not recommended.

IP multicast

IPv4 and IPv6 Multicast traffic is only sent to the primary FPM (usually the FPM in slot 3). This is controlled by the following configuration:

```
config load-balance flow-rule
  edit 15
    set status enable
    set vlan 0
    set ether-type ipv4
    set src-addr-ipv4 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0
    set dst-addr-ipv4 224.0.0.0 240.0.0.0
    set protocol any
    set action forward
    set forward-slot master
    set priority 5
    set comment "ipv4 multicast"
  next
  edit 16
    set status enable
    set vlan 0
    set ether-type ipv6
    set src-addr-ipv6 ::/0
    set dst-addr-ipv6 ff00::/8
    set protocol any
    set action forward
    set forward-slot master
    set priority 5
    set comment "ipv6 multicast"
  end
```

High availability

Only the M1 and M2 interfaces are used for the HA heartbeat communication. For information on how to set up HA heartbeat communication using the M1 and M2 interfaces, see [Connect the M1 and M2 interfaces for HA heartbeat](#)

[communication on page 90](#)

The following FortiOS HA features are not supported or are supported differently by FortiGate-7000 v6.0.9:

- Active-active HA is not supported.
- The range for the HA `group-id` is 0 to 31.
- Failover logic for FortiGate-7000 HA is not the same as FGCP for other FortiGate clusters.
- HA heartbeat configuration is specific to FortiGate-7000 systems and differs from standard HA.
- FortiGate-7000 HA does not support the `route-wait` and `route-hold` options for tuning route synchronization between FortiGate-7000s.
- VLAN monitoring using the `config system ha-monitor` command is not supported.

Shelf manager module

It is not possible to access SMM CLI using Telnet or SSH. Only console access is supported using the chassis front panel console ports as described in the FortiGate-7000 system guide.

For monitoring purpose, IPMI over IP is supported on SMM Ethernet ports. See your FortiGate-7000 system guide for details.

FortiOS features not supported by FortiGate-7000 v6.0.9

The following mainstream FortiOS 6.0.9 features are not supported by the FortiGate-7000 v6.0.9:

- SD-WAN (because of known issues)
- ECMP load balancing is not supported.
- HA dedicated management interfaces
- Hardware switch
- WiFi controller
- IPv4 over IPv6, IPv6 over IPv4, IPv6 over IPv6 features
- GRE tunneling is only supported after creating a load balance flow rule, for example:

```
config load-balance flow-rule
  edit 0
    set status enable
    set vlan 0
    set ether-type ip
    set protocol gre
    set action forward
    set forward-slot master
    set priority 3
  end
```

- Hard disk features including, WAN optimization, web caching, explicit proxy content caching, disk logging, and GUI-based packet sniffing.
- The FortiGate-7000 platform only supports quarantining files to FortiAnalyzer.
- Log messages should be sent only using the management aggregate interface
- The FortiGate-7000 does not support configuring dedicated management interfaces using the `config system dedicated-mgmt` command or by enabling the `dedicated-to management interface` option. The purpose of

the dedicated management interface feature is to add a routing table just for management connections. This functionality is supported by the FortiGate-7000 management VDOM (mgmt-vdom) that has its own routing table and contains all of the FortiGate-7000 management interfaces.

- Enabling the system settings option `tcp-session-without-syn` and configuring a firewall policy to accept sessions without syn packets allows FortiOS to add entries to its session table for sessions that do not include SYN packets. These sessions can only be load balanced by the DP processor if the `dp-load-distribution-method` is set to `src-dst-ip-sport-dport` (default) or `src-dst-ip`. If any other load distribution method is used, the sessions will be dropped. As well, the DP processor cannot load balance these sessions if they are accepted by a firewall policy with NAT enabled.

IPsec VPN tunnels terminated by the FortiGate-7000

For a list of new FortiOS 6.0.9 FortiGate-7000 IPsec VPN features and a list of IPsec VPN features not supported by FortiOS 6.0.9 FortiGate-7000 IPsec VPN, see [FortiGate-7000 IPsec VPN on page 82](#).

SSL VPN

Sending all SSL VPN sessions to the primary FPM is recommended. You can do this by:

- Creating a flow rule that sends all sessions that use the SSL VPN destination port and IP address to the primary FPM.
- Creating flow rules that send all sessions that use the SSL VPN IP pool addresses to the primary FPM.

For more information about FortiGate-7000 SSL VPN support, see [SSL VPN load balancing on page 71](#).

Traffic shaping and DDoS policies

Each FPM applies traffic shaping and DDoS quotas independently. Because of load-balancing, this may allow more traffic than expected.

FortiGuard web filtering and spam filtering queries

The FortiGate-7000 sends all FortiGuard web filtering and spam filtering rating queries through a management interface from the management VDOM.

Web filtering quotas

On a VDOM operating with the **Inspection Mode** set to **Proxy**, you can go to **Security Profiles > Web Filter** and set up **Category Usage Quotas**. Each FPM has its own quota, and the FortiGate-7000 applies quotas per FPM and not per the

entire FortiGate-7000 system. This could result in quotas being exceeded if sessions for the same user are processed by different FPMs.

Log messages include a slot field

An additional "slot" field has been added to log messages to identify the FPM that generated the log.

FortiOS Carrier

You have to apply a FortiOS Carrier license separately to each FIM and FPM to license a FortiGate-7000 for FortiOS Carrier.

Special notice for new deployment connectivity testing

Only the primary FPM can successfully ping external IP addresses. During a new deployment, while performing connectivity testing from the Fortigate-7000, make sure to run `execute ping` tests from the primary FPM CLI.

Display the process name associated with a process ID

You can use the following command to display the process name associated with a process ID (PID):

```
diagnose sys process nameof <pid>
```

Where <pid> is the process ID.

FortiGate-7000 v6.0.8 special features and limitations

This section describes special features and limitations for FortiGate-7000 v6.0.8.

Managing the FortiGate-7000

By default the MGMT1 to MGMT4 interfaces of the FIMs in slot 1 and slot 2 are in a single static aggregate interface named mgmt with IP address 192.168.1.99. You manage the FortiGate-7000 by connecting any one of these eight interfaces to your network, opening a web browser and browsing to the management IP address. For a factory default configuration, browse to <https://192.168.1.99>.



The FortiGate-7030E has one FIM and the MGMT1 to MGMT4 interfaces of that module are the only interfaces in the aggregate interface.

Default management VDOM

By default the FortiGate-7000 configuration includes a management VDOM named mgmt-vdom. For the FortiGate-7000 system to operate normally you should not change the configuration of this VDOM and this VDOM should always be the management VDOM. You should also not add or remove interfaces from this VDOM.

You have full control over the configurations of other FortiGate-7000 VDOMs.

Default Security Fabric configuration



The FortiGate-7000 uses the Fortinet Security Fabric for communication and synchronization between the FIMs and the FPMs and for normal GUI operation. By default, the Security Fabric is enabled and must remain enabled for normal operation.

Changing the default Security Fabric configuration could disrupt communication and affect system performance.

As of version 6.0.8 you can no longer change the `status` to `disable`.

Default Security Fabric configuration:

```
config system csf
  set status enable
  set configuration-sync local
  set management-ip 0.0.0.0
  set management-port 0
```

end

For the FortiGate-7000 to operate normally, you must not change the Security Fabric configuration.

Maximum number of LAGs and interfaces per LAG

FortiGate-7000 systems support up to 16 link aggregation groups (LAGs). This includes both normal link aggregation groups and redundant interfaces and including the redundant interface that contains the mgmt1 to mgmt4 management interfaces. A FortiGate-7000 LAG can include up to 20 interfaces.

Firewall

TCP sessions with NAT enabled that are expected to be idle for more than the distributed processing normal TCP timer (which is 3605 seconds) should only be distributed to the master FPM using a flow rule. You can configure the distributed normal TCP timer using the following command:

```
config system global
    set dp-tcp-normal-timer <timer>
end
```

UDP sessions with NAT enabled that are expected to be idle for more than the distributed processing normal UDP timer should only be distributed to the primary FPM using a flow rule.

Enhanced MAC (EMAC) VLAN support

FortiOS 6.0.8 for FortiGate-7000 supports the media access control (MAC) virtual local area network (VLAN) feature. EMAC VLANs allow you to configure multiple virtual interfaces with different MAC addresses (and therefore different IP addresses) on a physical interface.

For more information about EMAC VLAN support, see [Enhanced MAC VLANs](#).

Use the following command to configure an EMAC VLAN:

```
config system interface
    edit <interface-name>
        set type emac-vlan
        set vlan-id <VLAN-ID>
        set interface <physical-interface>
    end
```

FortiLink support limitations

The FortiGate-7000 has the following FortiLink support limitations:

- The FIM in slot 1 (FIM-01) must be the primary FIM. FortiLink will not work if FIM-02 is the primary FIM.



In an HA configuration, if the FIM in slot 1 of the primary FortiGate-7000 fails, the secondary FortiGate-7000 becomes the new primary FortiGate-7000 with a functioning FIM in slot 1 and FortiLink support continues after the failover.

- FortiGate-7000 for FortiOS 6.0.8 does not support upgrading managed FortiSwitch firmware from the **FortiOS Managed FortiSwitch GUI** page. Instead you must use the FortiGate-7000 CLI or log into the managed FortiSwitch to upgrade managed FortiSwitch firmware.
- You can use any FortiGate-7000 interface as the FortiLink. However, using the M1, M2, and management interfaces is not recommended.

IP multicast

IPv4 and IPv6 Multicast traffic is only sent to the primary FPM (usually the FPM in slot 3). This is controlled by the following configuration:

```
config load-balance flow-rule
  edit 15
    set status enable
    set vlan 0
    set ether-type ipv4
    set src-addr-ipv4 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0
    set dst-addr-ipv4 224.0.0.0 240.0.0.0
    set protocol any
    set action forward
    set forward-slot master
    set priority 5
    set comment "ipv4 multicast"
  next
  edit 16
    set status enable
    set vlan 0
    set ether-type ipv6
    set src-addr-ipv6 ::/0
    set dst-addr-ipv6 ff00::/8
    set protocol any
    set action forward
    set forward-slot master
    set priority 5
    set comment "ipv6 multicast"
end
```

High availability

Only the M1 and M2 interfaces are used for the HA heartbeat communication. For information on how to set up HA heartbeat communication using the M1 and M2 interfaces, see [Connect the M1 and M2 interfaces for HA heartbeat](#)

[communication on page 90](#)

The following FortiOS HA features are not supported or are supported differently by FortiGate-7000 v6.0.8:

- Active-active HA is not supported.
- The range for the HA `group-id` is 0 to 31.
- Failover logic for FortiGate-7000 HA is not the same as FGCP for other FortiGate clusters.
- HA heartbeat configuration is specific to FortiGate-7000 systems and differs from standard HA.
- FortiGate-7000 HA does not support the `route-wait` and `route-hold` options for tuning route synchronization between FortiGate-7000s.
- VLAN monitoring using the `config system ha-monitor` command is not supported.

Shelf manager module

It is not possible to access SMM CLI using Telnet or SSH. Only console access is supported using the chassis front panel console ports as described in the FortiGate-7000 system guide.

For monitoring purpose, IPMI over IP is supported on SMM Ethernet ports. See your FortiGate-7000 system guide for details.

FortiOS features not supported by FortiGate-7000 v6.0.8

The following mainstream FortiOS 6.0.8 features are not supported by the FortiGate-7000 v6.0.8:

- SD-WAN (because of known issues)
- ECMP load balancing is not supported.
- HA dedicated management interfaces
- Hardware switch
- WiFi controller
- IPv4 over IPv6, IPv6 over IPv4, IPv6 over IPv6 features
- GRE tunneling is only supported after creating a load balance flow rule, for example:

```
config load-balance flow-rule
  edit 0
    set status enable
    set vlan 0
    set ether-type ip
    set protocol gre
    set action forward
    set forward-slot master
    set priority 3
  end
```

- Hard disk features including, WAN optimization, web caching, explicit proxy content caching, disk logging, and GUI-based packet sniffing.
- The FortiGate-7000 platform only supports quarantining files to FortiAnalyzer.
- Log messages should be sent only using the management aggregate interface
- The FortiGate-7000 does not support configuring dedicated management interfaces using the `config system dedicated-mgmt` command or by enabling the `dedicated-to management interface` option. The purpose of

the dedicated management interface feature is to add a routing table just for management connections. This functionality is supported by the FortiGate-7000 management VDOM (mgmt-vdom) that has its own routing table and contains all of the FortiGate-7000 management interfaces.

- Enabling the system settings option `tcp-session-without-syn` and configuring a firewall policy to accept sessions without syn packets allows FortiOS to add entries to its session table for sessions that do not include SYN packets. These sessions can only be load balanced by the DP processor if the `dp-load-distribution-method` is set to `src-dst-ip-sport-dport` (default) or `src-dst-ip`. If any other load distribution method is used, the sessions will be dropped. As well, the DP processor cannot load balance these sessions if they are accepted by a firewall policy with NAT enabled.

IPsec VPN tunnels terminated by the FortiGate-7000

For a list of new FortiOS 6.0.8 FortiGate-7000 IPsec VPN features and a list of IPsec VPN features not supported by FortiOS 6.0.8 FortiGate-7000 IPsec VPN, see [FortiGate-7000 IPsec VPN on page 82](#).

SSL VPN

Sending all SSL VPN sessions to the primary FPM is recommended. You can do this by:

- Creating a flow rule that sends all sessions that use the SSL VPN destination port and IP address to the primary FPM.
- Creating flow rules that send all sessions that use the SSL VPN IP pool addresses to the primary FPM.

For more information about FortiGate-7000 SSL VPN support, see [SSL VPN load balancing on page 71](#).

Traffic shaping and DDoS policies

Each FPM applies traffic shaping and DDoS quotas independently. Because of load-balancing, this may allow more traffic than expected.

FortiGuard web filtering and spam filtering queries

The FortiGate-7000 sends all FortiGuard web filtering and spam filtering rating queries through a management interface from the management VDOM.

Web filtering quotas

On a VDOM operating with the **Inspection Mode** set to **Proxy**, you can go to **Security Profiles > Web Filter** and set up **Category Usage Quotas**. Each FPM has its own quota, and the FortiGate-7000 applies quotas per FPM and not per the

entire FortiGate-7000 system. This could result in quotas being exceeded if sessions for the same user are processed by different FPMs.

Log messages include a slot field

An additional "slot" field has been added to log messages to identify the FPM that generated the log.

FortiOS Carrier

You have to apply a FortiOS Carrier license separately to each FIM and FPM to license a FortiGate-7000 for FortiOS Carrier.

Special notice for new deployment connectivity testing

Only the primary FPM can successfully ping external IP addresses. During a new deployment, while performing connectivity testing from the Fortigate-7000, make sure to run `execute ping` tests from the primary FPM CLI.

Display the process name associated with a process ID

You can use the following command to display the process name associated with a process ID (PID):

```
diagnose sys process nameof <pid>
```

Where <pid> is the process ID.

FortiGate-7000 v6.0.6 special features and limitations

This section describes special features and limitations for FortiGate-7000 v6.0.6.

Managing the FortiGate-7000

By default the MGMT1 to MGMT4 interfaces of the FIMs in slot 1 and slot 2 are in a single static aggregate interface named mgmt with IP address 192.168.1.99. You manage the FortiGate-7000 by connecting any one of these eight interfaces to your network, opening a web browser and browsing to the management IP address. For a factory default configuration, browse to <https://192.168.1.99>.



The FortiGate-7030E has one FIM and the MGMT1 to MGMT4 interfaces of that module are the only interfaces in the aggregate interface.

Default management VDOM

By default the FortiGate-7000 configuration includes a management VDOM named mgmt-vdom. For the FortiGate-7000 system to operate normally you should not change the configuration of this VDOM and this VDOM should always be the management VDOM. You should also not add or remove interfaces from this VDOM.

You have full control over the configurations of other FortiGate-7000 VDOMs.

Default Security Fabric configuration



The FortiGate-7000 uses the Fortinet Security Fabric for communication and synchronization between the FIMs and the FPMs and for normal GUI operation. By default, the Security Fabric is enabled and must remain enabled for normal operation.

Changing the default Security Fabric configuration could disrupt communication and affect system performance.

As of version 6.0.6 you can no longer change the `status` to `disable`.

Default Security Fabric configuration:

```
config system csf
  set status enable
  set configuration-sync local
  set management-ip 0.0.0.0
  set management-port 0
```

end

For the FortiGate-7000 to operate normally, you must not change the Security Fabric configuration.

Maximum number of LAGs and interfaces per LAG

FortiGate-7000 systems support up to 16 link aggregation groups (LAGs). This includes both normal link aggregation groups and redundant interfaces and including the redundant interface that contains the mgmt1 to mgmt4 management interfaces. A FortiGate-7000 LAG can include up to 20 interfaces.

Firewall

TCP sessions with NAT enabled that are expected to be idle for more than the distributed processing normal TCP timer (which is 3605 seconds) should only be distributed to the master FPM using a flow rule. You can configure the distributed normal TCP timer using the following command:

```
config system global
    set dp-tcp-normal-timer <timer>
end
```

UDP sessions with NAT enabled that are expected to be idle for more than the distributed processing normal UDP timer should only be distributed to the primary FPM using a flow rule.

Enhanced MAC (EMAC) VLAN support

FortiOS 6.0.6 for FortiGate-7000 supports the media access control (MAC) virtual local area network (VLAN) feature. EMAC VLANs allow you to configure multiple virtual interfaces with different MAC addresses (and therefore different IP addresses) on a physical interface.

For more information about EMAC VLAN support, see [Enhanced MAC VLANs](#).

Use the following command to configure an EMAC VLAN:

```
config system interface
    edit <interface-name>
        set type emac-vlan
        set vlan-id <VLAN-ID>
        set interface <physical-interface>
    end
```

FortiLink support limitations

The FortiGate-7000 has the following FortiLink support limitations:

- The FIM in slot 1 (FIM-01) must be the primary FIM. FortiLink will not work if FIM-02 is the primary FIM.



In an HA configuration, if the FIM in slot 1 of the primary FortiGate-7000 fails, the secondary FortiGate-7000 becomes the new primary FortiGate-7000 with a functioning FIM in slot 1 and FortiLink support continues after the failover.

- FortiGate-7000 for FortiOS 6.0.6 does not support upgrading managed FortiSwitch firmware from the **FortiOS Managed FortiSwitch GUI** page. Instead you must use the FortiGate-7000 CLI or log into the managed FortiSwitch to upgrade managed FortiSwitch firmware.
- You can use any FortiGate-7000 interface as the FortiLink. However, using the M1, M2, and management interfaces is not recommended.

IP multicast

IPv4 and IPv6 Multicast traffic is only sent to the primary FPM (usually the FPM in slot 3). This is controlled by the following configuration:

```
config load-balance flow-rule
  edit 15
    set status enable
    set vlan 0
    set ether-type ipv4
    set src-addr-ipv4 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0
    set dst-addr-ipv4 224.0.0.0 240.0.0.0
    set protocol any
    set action forward
    set forward-slot master
    set priority 5
    set comment "ipv4 multicast"
  next
  edit 16
    set status enable
    set vlan 0
    set ether-type ipv6
    set src-addr-ipv6 ::/0
    set dst-addr-ipv6 ff00::/8
    set protocol any
    set action forward
    set forward-slot master
    set priority 5
    set comment "ipv6 multicast"
end
```

High availability

Only the M1 and M2 interfaces are used for the HA heartbeat communication. For information on how to set up HA heartbeat communication using the M1 and M2 interfaces, see [Connect the M1 and M2 interfaces for HA heartbeat](#)

[communication on page 90](#)

The following FortiOS HA features are not supported or are supported differently by FortiGate-7000 v6.0.6:

- Active-active HA is not supported.
- The range for the HA `group-id` is 0 to 31.
- Failover logic for FortiGate-7000 HA is not the same as FGCP for other FortiGate clusters.
- HA heartbeat configuration is specific to FortiGate-7000 systems and differs from standard HA.
- FortiGate-7000 HA does not support the `route-wait` and `route-hold` options for tuning route synchronization between FortiGate-7000s.
- VLAN monitoring using the `config system ha-monitor` command is not supported.

Shelf manager module

It is not possible to access SMM CLI using Telnet or SSH. Only console access is supported using the chassis front panel console ports as described in the FortiGate-7000 system guide.

For monitoring purpose, IPMI over IP is supported on SMM Ethernet ports. See your FortiGate-7000 system guide for details.

FortiOS features not supported by FortiGate-7000 v6.0.6

The following mainstream FortiOS 6.0.6 features are not supported by the FortiGate-7000 v6.0.6:

- SD-WAN (because of known issues)
- ECMP load balancing is not supported.
- HA dedicated management interfaces
- Hardware switch
- WiFi controller
- IPv4 over IPv6, IPv6 over IPv4, IPv6 over IPv6 features
- GRE tunneling is only supported after creating a load balance flow rule, for example:

```
config load-balance flow-rule
  edit 0
    set status enable
    set vlan 0
    set ether-type ip
    set protocol gre
    set action forward
    set forward-slot master
    set priority 3
  end
```

- Hard disk features including, WAN optimization, web caching, explicit proxy content caching, disk logging, and GUI-based packet sniffing.
- The FortiGate-7000 platform only supports quarantining files to FortiAnalyzer.
- Log messages should be sent only using the management aggregate interface
- The FortiGate-7000 does not support configuring dedicated management interfaces using the `config system dedicated-mgmt` command or by enabling the `dedicated-to management interface` option. The purpose of

the dedicated management interface feature is to add a routing table just for management connections. This functionality is supported by the FortiGate-7000 management VDOM (mgmt-vdom) that has its own routing table and contains all of the FortiGate-7000 management interfaces.

- Enabling the system settings option `tcp-session-without-syn` and configuring a firewall policy to accept sessions without syn packets allows FortiOS to add entries to its session table for sessions that do not include SYN packets. These sessions can only be load balanced by the DP processor if the `dp-load-distribution-method` is set to `src-dst-ip-sport-dport` (default) or `src-dst-ip`. If any other load distribution method is used, the sessions will be dropped. As well, the DP processor cannot load balance these sessions if they are accepted by a firewall policy with NAT enabled.

IPsec VPN tunnels terminated by the FortiGate-7000

For a list of new FortiOS 6.0.6 FortiGate-7000 IPsec VPN features and a list of IPsec VPN features not supported by FortiOS 6.0.6 FortiGate-7000 IPsec VPN, see [FortiGate-7000 IPsec VPN on page 82](#).

SSL VPN

Sending all SSL VPN sessions to the primary FPM is recommended. You can do this by:

- Creating a flow rule that sends all sessions that use the SSL VPN destination port and IP address to the primary FPM.
- Creating flow rules that send all sessions that use the SSL VPN IP pool addresses to the primary FPM.

For more information about FortiGate-7000 SSL VPN support, see [SSL VPN load balancing on page 71](#).

Traffic shaping and DDoS policies

Each FPM applies traffic shaping and DDoS quotas independently. Because of load-balancing, this may allow more traffic than expected.

FortiGuard web filtering and spam filtering queries

The FortiGate-7000 sends all FortiGuard web filtering and spam filtering rating queries through a management interface from the management VDOM.

Web filtering quotas

On a VDOM operating with the **Inspection Mode** set to **Proxy**, you can go to **Security Profiles > Web Filter** and set up **Category Usage Quotas**. Each FPM has its own quota, and the FortiGate-7000 applies quotas per FPM and not per the

entire FortiGate-7000 system. This could result in quotas being exceeded if sessions for the same user are processed by different FPMs.

Log messages include a slot field

An additional "slot" field has been added to log messages to identify the FPM that generated the log.

FortiOS Carrier

You have to apply a FortiOS Carrier license separately to each FIM and FPM to license a FortiGate-7000 for FortiOS Carrier.

Special notice for new deployment connectivity testing

Only the primary FPM can successfully ping external IP addresses. During a new deployment, while performing connectivity testing from the Fortigate-7000, make sure to run `execute ping` tests from the primary FPM CLI.

Display the process name associated with a process ID

You can use the following command to display the process name associated with a process ID (PID):

```
diagnose sys process nameof <pid>
```

Where <pid> is the process ID.

FortiGate-7000 v6.0.4 special features and limitations

This section describes special features and limitations for FortiGate-7000 v6.0.4.

Managing the FortiGate-7000

Management is only possible through the MGMT1 to MGMT4 front panel management interfaces. By default the MGMT1 to MGMT4 interfaces of the FIMs in slot 1 and slot 2 are in a single static aggregate interface named mgmt with IP address 192.168.1.99. You manage the FortiGate-7000 by connecting any one of these eight interfaces to your network, opening a web browser and browsing to the management IP address. For a factory default configuration, browse to <https://192.168.1.99>.



The FortiGate-7030E has one FIM and the MGMT1 to MGMT4 interfaces of that module are the only interfaces in the aggregate interface.

Default management VDOM

By default the FortiGate-7000 configuration includes a management VDOM named mgmt-vdom. For the FortiGate-7000 system to operate normally you should not change the configuration of this VDOM and this VDOM should always be the management VDOM. You should also not add or remove interfaces from this VDOM.

You have full control over the configurations of other FortiGate-7000 VDOMs.

Default Security Fabric configuration



The FortiGate-7000 uses the Fortinet Security Fabric for communication and synchronization between the FIMs and the FPMs and for normal GUI operation. By default, the Security Fabric is enabled and must remain enabled for normal operation.

Changing the default Security Fabric configuration could disrupt communication and affect system performance.

Default Security Fabric configuration:

```
config system csf
    set status enable
    set configuration-sync local
    set management-ip 0.0.0.0
    set management-port 0
end
```

For the FortiGate-7000 to operate normally, you must not change the Security Fabric configuration.

Maximum number of LAGs and interfaces per LAG

FortiGate-7000 systems support up to 16 link aggregation groups (LAGs). This includes both normal link aggregation groups and redundant interfaces and including the redundant interface that contains the mgmt1 to mgmt4 management interfaces. A FortiGate-7000 LAG can include up to 20 interfaces.

Firewall

TCP sessions with NAT enabled that are expected to be idle for more than the distributed processing normal TCP timer (which is 3605 seconds) should only be distributed to the master FPM using a flow rule. You can configure the distributed normal TCP timer using the following command:

```
config system global
    set dp-tcp-normal-timer <timer>
end
```

UDP sessions with NAT enabled that are expected to be idle for more than the distributed processing normal UDP timer should only be distributed to the primary FPM using a flow rule.

IP multicast

IPv4 and IPv6 Multicast traffic is only sent to the primary FPM (usually the FPM in slot 3). This is controlled by the following configuration:

```
config load-balance flow-rule
    edit 15
        set status enable
        set vlan 0
        set ether-type ipv4
        set src-addr-ipv4 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0
        set dst-addr-ipv4 224.0.0.0 240.0.0.0
        set protocol any
        set action forward
        set forward-slot master
        set priority 5
        set comment "ipv4 multicast"
    next
    edit 16
        set status enable
        set vlan 0
        set ether-type ipv6
        set src-addr-ipv6 ::/0
        set dst-addr-ipv6 ff00::/8
        set protocol any
        set action forward
```

```
set forward-slot master
set priority 5
set comment "ipv6 multicast"
end
```

High availability

Only the M1 and M2 interfaces are used for the HA heartbeat communication. For information on how to set up HA heartbeat communication using the M1 and M2 interfaces, see [Connect the M1 and M2 interfaces for HA heartbeat communication on page 90](#)

The following FortiOS HA features are not supported or are supported differently by FortiGate-7000 v6.0.4:

- Active-active HA is not supported.
- The range for the HA `group-id` is 0 to 31.
- Failover logic for FortiGate-7000 HA is not the same as FGCP for other FortiGate clusters.
- HA heartbeat configuration is specific to FortiGate-7000 systems and differs from standard HA.
- FortiGate-7000 HA does not support the `route-wait`, and `route-hold` options for tuning route synchronization between FortiGate-7000s.
- VLAN monitoring using the `config system ha-monitor` command is not supported.

Use of the `diagnose sys ha checksum cluster` command not recommended

The FortiGate-7000 uses a custom FGCP HA implementation and the `diagnose sys ha checksum cluster` command may show incorrect checksums so can't be used to check cluster synchronization. Instead you can log into the primary FIM of each FortiGate-7000 in the cluster and use the `diagnose sys confsync showcsum` and compare the results.

Shelf manager module

It is not possible to access SMM CLI using Telnet or SSH. Only console access is supported using the chassis front panel console ports as described in the FortiGate-7000 system guide.

For monitoring purpose, IPMI over IP is supported on SMM Ethernet ports. See your FortiGate-7000 system guide for details.

FortiOS features not supported by FortiGate-7000 v6.0.4

The following mainstream FortiOS 6.0.4 features are not supported by the FortiGate-7000 v6.0.4:

- SD-WAN (because of known issues)
- ECMP load balancing is not supported.
- EMAC-VLANs (because of known issues)

- HA dedicated management interfaces
- Hardware switch
- Switch controller
- WiFi controller
- IPv4 over IPv6, IPv6 over IPv4, IPv6 over IPv6 features
- GRE tunneling is only supported after creating a load balance flow rule, for example:

```
config load-balance flow-rule
  edit 0
    set status enable
    set vlan 0
    set ether-type ip
    set protocol gre
    set action forward
    set forward-slot master
    set priority 3
  end
```

- Hard disk features including, WAN optimization, web caching, explicit proxy content caching, disk logging, and GUI-based packet sniffing.
- The FortiGate-7000 platform only supports quarantining files to FortiAnalyzer.
- Log messages should be sent only using the management aggregate interface
- The FortiGate-7000 does not support configuring dedicated management interfaces using the `config system dedicated-mgmt` command or by enabling the `dedicated-to management` interface option. The purpose of the dedicated management interface feature is to add a routing table just for management connections. This functionality is supported by the FortiGate-7000 management VDOM (mgmt-vdom) that has its own routing table and contains all of the FortiGate-7000 management interfaces.
- Enabling the system settings option `tcp-session-without-syn` and configuring a firewall policy to accept sessions without syn packets allows FortiOS to add entries to its session table for sessions that do not include SYN packets. These sessions can only be load balanced by the DP processor if the `dp-load-distribution-method` is set to `src-dst-ip-sport-dport` (default) or `src-dst-ip`. If any other load distribution method is used, the sessions will be dropped. As well, the DP processor cannot load balance these sessions if they are accepted by a firewall policy with NAT enabled.

IPsec VPN tunnels terminated by the FortiGate-7000

For a list of new FortiOS 6.0.4 FortiGate-7000 IPsec VPN features and a list of IPsec VPN features not supported by FortiOS 6.0.4 FortiGate-7000 IPsec VPN, see [FortiGate-7000 IPsec VPN on page 82](#).

SSL VPN

Sending all SSL VPN sessions to the primary FPM is recommended. You can do this by:

- Creating a flow rule that sends all sessions that use the SSL VPN destination port and IP address to the primary FPM.
- Creating flow rules that send all sessions that use the SSL VPN IP pool addresses to the primary FPM.

SSL VPN can't listen on LACP LAG interfaces. This limitation will be fixed in a future release.

For more information about FortiGate-7000 SSL VPN support, see [SSL VPN load balancing on page 71](#).

Traffic shaping and DDoS policies

Each FPM applies traffic shaping and DDoS quotas independently. Because of load-balancing, this may allow more traffic than expected.

FortiGuard web filtering and spam filtering queries

The FortiGate-7000 sends all FortiGuard web filtering and spam filtering rating queries through a management interface from the management VDOM.

Web filtering quotas

On a VDOM operating with the **Inspection Mode** set to **Proxy**, you can go to **Security Profiles > Web Filter** and set up **Category Usage Quotas**. Each FPM has its own quota, and the FortiGate-7000 applies quotas per FPM and not per the entire FortiGate-7000 system. This could result in quotas being exceeded if sessions for the same user are processed by different FPMs.

Log messages include a slot field

An additional "slot" field has been added to log messages to identify the FPM that generated the log.

FortiOS Carrier

You have to apply a FortiOS Carrier license separately to each FIM and FPM to license a FortiGate-7000 for FortiOS Carrier.

Special notice for new deployment connectivity testing

Only the primary FPM can successfully ping external IP addresses. During a new deployment, while performing connectivity testing from the FortiGate-7000, make sure to run `execute ping` tests from the primary FPM CLI.

FortiGate-7000 config CLI commands

This chapter describes the following FortiGate-7000 load balancing configuration commands:

- [config load-balance flow-rule](#)
- [config load-balance setting](#)

config load-balance flow-rule

Use this command to create flow rules that add exceptions to how matched traffic is processed. You can use flow rules to match a type of traffic and control whether the traffic is forwarded or blocked. And if the traffic is forwarded, you can specify whether to forward the traffic to a specific slot or slots. Unlike firewall policies, load-balance rules are not stateful so for bi-directional traffic, you may need to define two flow rules to match both traffic directions (forward and reverse).

Syntax

```
config load-balance flow-rule
edit <id>
    set status {disable | enable}
    set src-interface <interface-name> [<interface-name>...]
    set vlan <vlan-id>
    set ether-type {any | arp | ip | ipv4 | ipv6}
    set src-addr-ipv4 <ip4-address> <netmask>
    set dst-addr-ipv4 <ip4-address> <netmask>
    set src-addr-ipv6 <ip6-address> <netmask>
    set dst-addr-ipv6 <ip6-address> <netmask>
    set protocol {<protocol-number> | any | icmp | icmpv6 | tcp | udp | igmp | sctp | gre
        | esp | ah | ospf | pim | vrrp}
    set src-l4port <start>[-<end>]
    set dst-l4port <start>[-<end>]
    set icmptype <type>
    set icmpcode <type>
    set tcp-flag {any | syn | fin | rst}
    set action {forward | mirror-ingress | stats | drop}
    set mirror-interface <interface-name>
    set forward-slot {master | all | load-balance | <FPM#>}
    set priority <number>
    set comment <text>
end
```

status {disable | enable}

Enable or disable this flow rule. New flow rules are disabled by default.

src-interface <interface-name> [interface-name>...]

Optionally add the names of one or more front panel interfaces accepting the traffic to be subject to the flow rule. If you don't specify a `src-interface`, the flow rule matches traffic received by any interface.

If you are matching VLAN traffic, select the interface that the VLAN has been added to and use the `vlan` option to specify the VLAN ID of the VLAN interface.

vlan <vlan-id>

If the traffic matching the rule is VLAN traffic, enter the VLAN ID used by the traffic. You must set `src-interface` to the interface that the VLAN interface is added to.

ether-type {any | arp | ip | ipv4 | ipv6}

The type of traffic to be matched by the rule. You can match any traffic (the default) or just match ARP, IP, IPv4 or IPv6 traffic.

{src-addr-ipv4 | dst-addr-ipv4} <ipv4-address> <netmask>

The IPv4 source and destination address of the IPv4 traffic to be matched. The default of `0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0` matches all IPv4 traffic. Available if `ether-type` is set to `ipv4`.

{src-addr-ipv6 | dst-addr-ipv6} <ip-address> <netmask>

The IPv6 source and destination address of the IPv6 traffic to be matched. The default of `::/0` matches all IPv6 traffic. Available if `ether-type` is set to `ipv6`.

protocol {<protocol-number> | any | icmp | icmpv6 | tcp | udp | igmp | sctp | gre | esp | ah | ospf | pim | vrrp}

If `ether-type` is set to `ip`, `ipv4`, or `ipv6`, specify the protocol of the IP, IPv4, or IPv6 traffic to match the rule. The default is `any`. You can specify any protocol number or you can use the following keywords to select common protocols.

Option	Protocol number
icmp	1
icmpv6	58
tcp	6
udp	17
igmp	2
sctp	132
gre	47

Option	Protocol number
esp	50
ah	51
ospf	89
pim	103
vrrp	112

{src-l4port | dst-l4port} <start>[-<end>]

Specify a layer 4 source port range and destination port range. This option appears when `protocol` is set to `tcp` or `udp`. The default range is 0-0, which matches all ports. You don't have to enter a range to match just one port. For example, to set the source port to 80, enter `set src-l4port 80`.

set icmp type <type>

Specify an ICMP type number in the range of 0 to 255. The default is 255. This option appears if `protocol` is set to `icmp`. For information about ICMP type numbers, see [Internet Control Message Protocol \(ICMP\) Parameters](#).

icmpcode <type>

If the ICMP type also includes an ICMP code, you can use this option to add that ICMP code. The ranges is 0 to 255. The default is 255. This option appears if `protocol` is set to `icmp`. For information about ICMP code numbers, see [Internet Control Message Protocol \(ICMP\) Parameters](#).

tcp-flag {any | syn | fin | rst}

Set the TCP session flag to match. The `any` setting (the default) matches all TCP sessions. You can add specific flags to only match specific TCP session types.

action {forward | mirror-ingress | stats | drop}

The action to take with matching sessions. They can be dropped, forwarded to another destination, or you can record statistics about the traffic for later analysis. You can combine two or three settings in one command for example, you can set `action` to both `forward` and `stats` to forward traffic and collect statistics about it. Use `append` to append additional options.

The default action is `forward`, which forwards packets to the specified `forward-slot`.

The `mirror-ingress` option copies (mirrors) all ingress packets that match this flow rule and sends them to the interface specified with the `mirror-interface` option.

mirror-interface <interface-name>

The name of the interface to send packets matched by this flow-rule to when `action` is set to `mirror-ingress`.

forward-slot {master | all | load-balance | <FPM#>}

The slot that you want to forward the traffic that matches this rule to.

Where:

`master` forwards traffic to the primary FPM.

`all` means forward the traffic to all FPMs.

`load-balance` means forward this traffic to the DP processors that then use the default load balancing configuration to handle this traffic.

`<FPM#>` forward the matching traffic to a specific FPM. For example, FPM3 is the FPM in slot 3.

priority <number>

Set the priority of the flow rule in the range 1 (highest priority) to 10 (lowest priority). Higher priority rules are matched first. You can use the priority to control which rule is matched first if you have overlapping rules.

The default priority is 5.

comment <text>

Optionally add a comment that describes the flow rule.

config load-balance setting

Use this command to set a wide range of load balancing settings.

```
config load-balance setting
    set slbc-mgmt-intf mgmt
    set max-miss-heartbeats <heartbeats>
    set max-miss-mgmt-heartbeats <heartbeats>
    set weighted-load-balance {disable | enable}
    set ipsec-load-balance {disable | enable}
    set gtp-load-balance {disable | enable}
    set dp-keep-assist-sessions {disable | enable}
    set dp-load-distribution-method {to-master | src-ip | dst-ip | src-dst-ip | src-ip-sport
        | dst-ip-dport | src-dst-ip-sport-dport}
    set dp-icmp-distribution-method {to-master | src-ip | dst-ip | src-dst-ip | derived}
    set dp-session-table-type {vdom-based | intf-vlan-based}
    set dp-fragment-session {disable | enable}
    config workers
        edit 3
            set status {disable | enable}
            set weight <weight>
        end
    end
end
```

slbc-mgmt-intf mgmt

Selects the interface used for management connections. For the FortiGate-7000, this option is always set to `mgmt` and cannot be changed. The IP address of this interface becomes the IP address used to enable management access to individual FIMs or FPMs using special administration ports as described in [Special management port numbers on page 58](#). To manage individual FIMs or FPMs, this interface must be connected to a network.



To enable using the special management port numbers to connect to individual FIMs and FPMs, the mgmt interface must be connected to a network, have a valid IP address, and have management or administrative access enabled. To block access to the special management port numbers, disconnect the mgmt interface from a network, configure the mgmt interface with an invalid IP address, or disable management or administrative access for the mgmt interface.

max-miss-heartbeats <heartbeats>

Set the number of missed heartbeats before an FPM is considered to have failed. If a failure occurs, the DP2 processor will no longer load balance sessions to the FPM.

The time between heartbeats is 0.2 seconds. Range is 3 to 300. A value of 3 means 0.6 seconds, 20 (the default) means 4 seconds, and 300 means 60 seconds.

max-miss-mgmt-heartbeats <heartbeats>

Set the number of missed management heartbeats before a FPM is considering to have failed. If a failure occurs, the DP2 processor will no longer load balance sessions to the FPM.

The time between management heartbeats is 1 second. Range is 3 to 300 heartbeats. The default is 10 heartbeats.

weighted-load-balance {disable | enable}

Enable weighted load balancing depending on the slot (or worker) weight. Use `config workers` to set the weight for each slot or worker.

ipsec-load-balance {disable | enable}

Enable or disable IPsec VPN load balancing.

By default IPsec VPN load balancing is enabled and the flow rules listed below are disabled. The FortiGate-7000 directs IPsec VPN sessions to the DP2 processors which load balance them among the FPMs.

Default IPsec VPN flow-rules

```
edit 21
    set status disable
    set ether-type ipv4
    set protocol udp
    set dst-l4port 500-500
```

```
        set action forward
        set forward-slot master
        set comment "ipv4 ike"
    next
    edit 22
        set status disable
        set ether-type ipv4
        set protocol udp
        set dst-l4port 4500-4500
        set action forward
        set forward-slot master
        set comment "ipv4 ike-natt dst"
    next
    edit 23
        set status disable
        set ether-type ipv4
        set protocol esp
        set action forward
        set forward-slot master
        set comment "ipv4 esp"
    next
```

If IPsec VPN load balancing is enabled, the FortiGate-7000 will drop IPsec VPN sessions traveling between two IPsec tunnels because the two IPsec tunnels may be terminated on different FPMs. If you have traffic entering the FortiGate-7000 from one IPsec VPN tunnel and leaving the FortiGate-7000 out another IPsec VPN tunnel you need to disable IPsec load balancing. Disabling IPsec VPN load balancing enables the default IPsec VPN flow-rules.

gtp-load-balance {disable | enable}

Enable GTP-U load balancing. If GTP-U load balancing is enabled, Tunnel Endpoint Identifiers (TEIDs) are used to identify GTP-U sessions.

dp-keep-assist-sessions {disable | enable}

This option is visible on the CLI but cannot be changed.

dp-load-distribution-method {to-master | round-robin | src-ip | dst-ip | src-dst-ip | src-ip-sport | dst-ip-dport | src-dst-ip-sport-dport}

Set the method used to load balance sessions among FPMs. Usually you would only need to change the load balancing method if you had specific requirements or you found that the default method wasn't distributing sessions in the manner that you would prefer. The default is `src-dst-ip-sport-dport` which means sessions are identified by their source address and port and destination address and port.

`to-master` directs all session to the primary FPM. This method is for troubleshooting only and should not be used for normal operation. Directing all sessions to the primary FPM will have a negative impact on performance.

`src-ip` sessions are distributed across all FPMs according to their source IP address.

`dst-ip` sessions are statically distributed across all FPMs according to their destination IP address.

`src-dst-ip` sessions are distributed across all FPMs according to their source and destination IP addresses.

`src-ip-sport` sessions are distributed across all FPMs according to their source IP address and source port.

`dst-ip-dport` sessions are distributed across all FPMs according to their destination IP address and destination port.

`src-dst-ip-sport-dport` distribute sessions across all FPMs according to their source and destination IP address, source port, and destination port. This is the default load balance algorithm and represents true session-aware load balancing. Session aware load balancing takes all session information into account when deciding where to send new sessions and where to send additional packets that are part of an already established session.



The `src-ip` and `dst-ip` load balancing methods use layer 3 information (IP addresses) to identify and load balance sessions. All of the other load balancing methods (except for `to-master`) use both layer 3 and layer 4 information (IP addresses and port numbers) to identify a TCP and UDP session. The layer 3 and layer 4 load balancing methods only use layer 3 information for other types of traffic (SCTP, ICMP, and ESP). If GTP load balancing is enabled, Tunnel Endpoint Identifiers (TEIDs) are used to identify GTP sessions.

`dp-icmp-distribution-method {to-master | src-ip | dst-ip | src-dst-ip | derived}`

Set the method used to load balance ICMP sessions among FPMs. Usually you would only need to change the load balancing method if you had specific requirements or you found that the default method wasn't distributing sessions in the manner that you would prefer. The default is `to-master`, which means all ICMP sessions are sent to the primary (master) FPM.

`to-master` directs all ICMP session to the primary FPM.

`src-ip` ICMP sessions are distributed across all FPMs according to their source IP address.

`dst-ip` ICMP sessions are statically distributed across all FPMs according to their destination IP address.

`src-dst-ip` ICMP sessions are distributed across all FPMs according to their source and destination IP addresses.

`derived` ICMP sessions are load balanced using the `dp-load-distribution-method` setting. Since port-based ICMP load balancing is not possible, if `dp-load-distribution-method` is set to a load balancing method that includes ports, ICMP load balancing will use the equivalent load balancing method that does not include ports. For example, if `dp-load-distribution-method` is set to the `src-dst-ip-sport-dport` (the default) then ICMP load balancing will use `src-dst-ip` load balancing.

`dp-session-table-type {vdom-based | intf-vlan-based}`

`dp-session-table-type` will be supported in a future version. For FortiOS 6.0.4, `dp-session-table-type` must be set to `intf-vlan-based` (the default value).

`dp-fragment-session {disable | enable}`

Enable or disable load balancing fragmented ICMP packets. The option is enabled by default.

When enabled, when the DP2 processor receives a head fragment packet, if a matching session is found, the DP2 processor creates an additional fragment session matching the source-ip, destination-ip, and IP identifier of the head fragment packet. Subsequent non-head fragments will match this fragment session and be forwarded to the same FPM as the head fragment.

When disabled, the DP2 processor broadcasts all non-head fragmented ICMP packets to all FPMs. FPMs that also received the head fragments of these packets combine the non-head fragments with the head fragment to reassemble the packets. FPMs that did not receive the head fragments discard the non-head fragments.

The age of the fragment session can be controlled using the following command:

```
config system global
    set dp-fragment-timer <timer>
end
```

The default <timer> value is 120 seconds.

config workers

Set the weight and enable or disable each worker (FPM). Use the edit command to specify the slot the FPM is installed in. You can enable or disable each FPM and set a weight for each FPM.

The weight range is 1 to 10. 5 is average (and the default), 1 is -80% of average and 10 is +100% of average. The weights take effect if `weighted-loadbalance` is enabled.

```
config workers
    edit 3
        set status enable
        set weight 5
    end
```

FortiGate-7000 execute CLI commands

This chapter describes the FortiGate-7000 execute commands. Many of these commands are only available from the FIM CLI.

execute factoryreset3

You can log into an FPM or FIM and use this command to reset the configuration of the module to the factory default configuration and shut the module down. This command is normally used in preparation for resetting and shutting down a FortiGate-7000.

execute ha manage <id>

In an HA configuration, use this command to log in to the primary FIM of the secondary FortiGate-7000.

<id> is the ID of the secondary FortiGate-7000. Usually the primary FortiGate-7000 ID is 0 and the secondary ID is 1. You can enter the ? to see the list of IDs that you can connect to.

After you have logged in, you can manage the secondary FortiGate-7000 from the primary FIM or you can use the `execute-load-balance slot manage` command to connect to the other FIM and the FPMs in the secondary FortiGate-7000.

execute load-balance console-mgmt {disable | enable}

Enable or disable the console disconnect command on the System Management Module (SMM) CLI. If the console disconnect command is enabled, you can log into one of the SMM consoles and use the console disconnect command to disconnect the other SMM console.

The FortiGate-7000 SMM has two consoles that you can use to connect to the SMM CLI or to the CLIs of any of the FIMs or FPMs in the FortiGate-7000 system. However, the system only supports one console connection to a module at a time. So if the other SMM console is connected to an FIM or FPM that you want to connect to, you have to disconnect the other SMM console to be able to connect to the FIM or FPM.

To disconnect the other SMM console, you can log into the SMM CLI and use the console disconnect command to disconnect the other console.

You can use this command to enable or disable this functionality.

execute load-balance console-mgmt disconnect <console>

Disconnect one of the SMM consoles from the FIM or FPM that it is connected to. <console> is the number of the console to disconnect.

This command allows you to disconnect a SMM console session from the FIM CLI without having to log into the SMM CLI.

execute load-balance console-mgmt info

This command shows whether the SMM console disconnect command is enabled or disabled and also shows which modules the SMM consoles are connected to or if they are disconnected.

execute load-balance license-mgmt list

List the licenses that have been added to this FortiGate-7000, including a license for extra VDOMs and FortiClient licenses.

execute load-balance license-mgmt reset {all | crypto-key | forticlient | vdom}

Reset FortiClient and VDOM licenses added to this FortiGate-7000 to factory defaults.

Specify `crypto-key` to re-generate crypto keys that are generated when the FortiGate-7000 first starts up.

Use `all` to reset all licenses and crypto keys.

Resetting licenses and crypto keys doesn't restart the FortiGate-7000.

execute set-next-reboot rollback

You can use the following command to change the firmware image that all of the FIMs and FPMs load the next time the FortiGate-7000 starts up.

```
execute set-next-reboot rollback
```

This command causes each component to select the firmware image stored on its non-active partition the next time the system starts up. The new command replaces the need to log into each component CLI and running the `execute set-next-reboot {primary | secondary}` command.

You can install firmware on the secondary partition of a FIM or FPM using the `execute restore secondary-image` command or from the BIOS.

execute load-balance slot manage <slot>

Log into the CLI of an individual FIM or FPM. Use <slot> to specify the FIM or FPM slot number.

You will be asked to authenticate to connect to the FIM or FPM. Use the `exit` command to end the session and return to the CLI from which you ran the original command.

execute load-balance slot power-off <slot-map>

Power off selected FPMs. This command shuts down the FPM immediately. You can use the `diagnose sys confsync status` command to verify that the management board cannot communicate with the FPMs.

You can use the `execute load-balance slot power-on` command to start up powered off FPMs.

execute load-balance slot power-on <slot-map>

Power on and start up selected FPMs. It may take a few minutes for the FPMs to start up. You can use the `diagnose sys confsync status` command to verify that the FPMs have started up.

execute load-balance slot reboot <slot-map>

Restart selected FPMs. It may take a few minutes for the FPMs to shut down and restart. You can use the `diagnose sys confsync status` command to verify that the FPMs have started up.

execute load-balance slot set-master-worker <slot>

Force an FPM to always be the primary or master FPM, <slot> is the FPM slot number.

The change takes place right away and all new primary FPM sessions are sent to the new primary FPM. Sessions that had been processed by the former primary FPM do not switch over, but continue to be processed by the former primary FPM.

This command is most often used for troubleshooting or testing. Since the command does not change the configuration, if the FortiGate-7000 restarts, the usual primary FPM selection process occurs.



FORTINET®



Copyright© 2022 Fortinet, Inc. All rights reserved. Fortinet®, FortiGate®, FortiCare® and FortiGuard®, and certain other marks are registered trademarks of Fortinet, Inc., in the U.S. and other jurisdictions, and other Fortinet names herein may also be registered and/or common law trademarks of Fortinet. All other product or company names may be trademarks of their respective owners. Performance and other metrics contained herein were attained in internal lab tests under ideal conditions, and actual performance and other results may vary. Network variables, different network environments and other conditions may affect performance results. Nothing herein represents any binding commitment by Fortinet, and Fortinet disclaims all warranties, whether express or implied, except to the extent Fortinet enters a binding written contract, signed by Fortinet's General Counsel, with a purchaser that expressly warrants that the identified product will perform according to certain expressly-identified performance metrics and, in such event, only the specific performance metrics expressly identified in such binding written contract shall be binding on Fortinet. For absolute clarity, any such warranty will be limited to performance in the same ideal conditions as in Fortinet's internal lab tests. In no event does Fortinet make any commitment related to future deliverables, features or development, and circumstances may change such that any forward-looking statements herein are not accurate. Fortinet disclaims in full any covenants, representations, and guarantees pursuant hereto, whether express or implied. Fortinet reserves the right to change, modify, transfer, or otherwise revise this publication without notice, and the most current version of the publication shall be applicable.